

# **The Westminster Confession of Faith**

## **Table of Contents**

<b>CHAPTER 1 - OF THE HOLY SCRIPTURE.....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>CHAPTER 2 - GOD AND THE HOLY TRINITY.....</b>	<b>6</b>
<b>CHAPTER 3 - GOD'S ETERNAL DECREE .....</b>	<b>8</b>
<b>CHAPTER 4 - CREATION.....</b>	<b>11</b>
<b>CHAPTER 5 - PROVIDENCE.....</b>	<b>12</b>
<b>CHAPTER 6 - THE FALL OF MAN, SIN, AND ITS PUNISHMENT .....</b>	<b>15</b>
<b>CHAPTER 7 - GOD'S COVENANT WITH MAN.....</b>	<b>17</b>
<b>CHAPTER 8 - CHRIST THE MEDIATOR .....</b>	<b>19</b>
<b>CHAPTER 9 - OF FREE WILL .....</b>	<b>23</b>
<b>CHAPTER 10 - EFFECTUAL CALLING.....</b>	<b>24</b>
<b>CHAPTER 11 - JUSTIFICATION .....</b>	<b>26</b>
<b>CHAPTER 12 - OF ADOPTION .....</b>	<b>28</b>
<b>CHAPTER 13 - SANCTIFICATION .....</b>	<b>29</b>
<b>CHAPTER 14 - SAVING FAITH .....</b>	<b>30</b>
<b>CHAPTER 15 - OF REPENTANCE TO LIFE .....</b>	<b>31</b>
<b>CHAPTER 16 - GOOD WORKS.....</b>	<b>33</b>
<b>CHAPTER 17 - OF THE PERSEVERANCE OF THE SAINTS.....</b>	<b>36</b>
<b>CHAPTER 18 - OF ASSURANCE OF GRACE AND SALVATION.....</b>	<b>38</b>
<b>CHAPTER 19 - OF THE LAW OF GOD .....</b>	<b>40</b>
<b>CHAPTER 20 - OF CHRISTIAN LIBERTY, AND LIBERTY OF CONSCIENCE .....</b>	<b>43</b>
<b>CHAPTER 21 - OF RELIGIOUS WORSHIP, AND THE SABBATH DAY.....</b>	<b>46</b>
<b>CHAPTER 22 - OF LAWFUL OATHS AND VOWS.....</b>	<b>51</b>
<b>CHAPTER 23 - OF THE CIVIL MAGISTRATE.....</b>	<b>53</b>
<b>CHAPTER 24 - OF MARRIAGE AND DIVORCE.....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>CHAPTER 25 - OF THE CHURCH.....</b>	<b>58</b>

<b>CHAPTER 26 - OF THE COMMUNION OF SAINTS.....</b>	<b>59</b>
<b>CHAPTER 27 - OF THE SACRAMENTS.....</b>	<b>60</b>
<b>CHAPTER 28 - OF BAPTISM.....</b>	<b>61</b>
<b>CHAPTER 29 - OF THE LORD'S SUPPER .....</b>	<b>63</b>
<b>CHAPTER 30 - OF CHURCH CENSURES .....</b>	<b>65</b>
<b>CHAPTER 31 - OF SYNODS AND COUNCILS .....</b>	<b>66</b>
<b>CHAPTER 32 - OF THE STATE OF MEN AFTER DEATH, AND OF THE RESURRECTION OF THE DEAD.....</b>	<b>68</b>
<b>CHAPTER 33 - OF THE LAST JUDGMENT .....</b>	<b>68</b>

# The Westminster Confession of Faith

## Chapter 1 - Of the Holy Scripture

1. Although the light of nature, and the works of creation and providence manifest the goodness, wisdom, and power of God, to such an extent that men are without excuse,<sup>1</sup> yet they are insufficient to give that knowledge of God, and of His will, which is necessary for salvation.<sup>2</sup> Therefore it pleased the Lord, at various times, and in diverse ways, to reveal Himself, and to declare His will to His Church.<sup>3</sup> Afterward, to better preserve and propagate the truth, and to more surely establish and comfort the Church against the corruption of the flesh, and the malice of Satan and of the world, he committed this revelation entirely to writing.<sup>4</sup> This makes the Holy Scripture most necessary,<sup>5</sup> because God's former ways of revealing His will to His people are now ceased.<sup>6</sup>

2. Under the name of Holy Scripture, or the written Word of God, are now contained all the books of the Old and New Testaments, which are these:

### Of the Old Testament:

Genesis	I Samuel	Esther	Jeremiah	Jonah
Exodus	II Samuel	Job	Lamentations	Micah
Leviticus	I Kings	Psalms	Ezekiel	Nahum
Numbers	II Kings	Proverbs	Daniel	Habakkuk
Deuteronomy	I Chronicles	Ecclesiastes	Hosea	Zephaniah
Joshua	II Chronicles	The Song of	Joel	Haggai
Judges	Ezra	Songs	Amos	Zechariah
Ruth	Nehemiah	Isaiah	Obadiah	Malachi;

---

<sup>1</sup> ROM 2:14-15 For when the Gentiles, not having the law, by nature do the things contained in the law, those not having the law are a law unto themselves: 15 Which shows the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another; Rom 1:19 Because what may be known of God is manifest in them; for God has shown it to them. 20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse. PSA 19:1 The heavens declare the glory of God; and the firmament shows his handiwork. 2 Day to day they speak, and night to night they show knowledge. 3 There is no speech or language where their voice is not heard. ROM 1:32 Who knowing the judgment of God, that those who commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in those who do them. 2:1 Therefore you are inexcusable, O man, whoever you are that judges: for in whatever you judge another, you condemn yourself; for you who judge do the same things.

<sup>2</sup> 1CO 1:21 For because, in the wisdom of God, the world did not know God by wisdom, it pleased God to save those who believe by the foolishness of preaching. 2:13 What we also speak, not in the words that man's wisdom teaches, but what the Holy Spirit teaches; comparing spiritual things with spiritual. 14 But the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness to him: nor can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.

<sup>3</sup> HEB 1:1 God, who at various times and in various ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets.

<sup>4</sup> PRO 22:19 That your trust may be in the Lord, I have made known to you this day, even to you. 20 Have I not written to you excellent things in counsels and knowledge, 21 That I might make you know the certainty of the words of truth; that you might answer the words of truth to those who send for you? LUK 1:3 It also seemed good to me, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write to you, most excellent Theophilus, in order 4 that you might know the certainty of those things, in which you have been instructed. ROM 15:4 For whatever things were written before this time were written for our learning, so that through patience and the comfort of the scriptures we might have hope. MAT 4:4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man will not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds out of the mouth of God. 7 Jesus said to him, It is written again, You will not tempt the Lord your God. 10 Then Jesus says to him, Get away, Satan: for it is written, You will worship the Lord your God, and you will serve only him. ISA 8:19 And when they will say to you, Seek those who have familiar spirits, and wizards who peep and mutter: should not a people seek their God, rather than the living seek the dead? 20 To the law and to the testimony: if they do not speak according to this word, it is because there is no light in them.

<sup>5</sup> 2TI 3:15 And that from childhood you have known the holy scriptures, which are able to make you wise to salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus. 2PE 1:19 We also have a more sure word of prophecy; to which you would do well to take heed, like a light that shines in a dark place until the day dawns, and the day star arises in your hearts.

<sup>6</sup> HEB 1:1 God, who at various times and in various ways spoke in time past to the fathers by the prophets, 2 Has in these last days spoken to us by his Son, whom he has appointed heir of all things, by whom he also made the worlds.

## Of the New Testament:

The Gospels according to	Galatians	The Epistle to the Hebrews
Matthew	Ephesians	The Epistle of James
Mark	Philippians	The first and second Epistles of
Luke	Colossians	Peter
John	Thessalonians I	The first, second, and third Epistles
The Acts of the Apostles	Thessalonians II	of John
Paul's Epistles to the	To Timothy I	The Epistle of Jude
Romans	To Timothy II	The Revelation of John
Corinthians I	To Titus	
Corinthians II	To Philemon	

All of these are given by the inspiration of God to be the rule of faith and life.<sup>7</sup>

3. The books commonly called the Apocrypha, because they are not divinely inspired, are not part of the canon of the Scripture. Therefore they have no authority in the Church of God, nor are any of them to be approved or made use of other than as human writings.<sup>8</sup>

4. The authority of the Holy Scripture does not depend upon the testimony of any man or Church. It depends entirely upon God who is its author, and who is truth itself. Therefore it is to be received, believed, and obeyed because it is the authoritative Word of God.<sup>9</sup>

5. We may be moved and induced by the testimony of the Church to a high and reverent esteem for the Holy Scripture.<sup>10</sup> There are many arguments by which it abundantly evidences itself to be the Word of God: the heavenly character of its content, the efficacy of the doctrine, the majesty of its style, the agreement of all its parts, the scope of the whole (which is to give all glory to God), the full disclosure it makes of the only means of man's salvation, its many other incomparable excellences, and its entire perfection. Nevertheless, our full persuasion and assurance of its infallible truth and divine authority is from the inward work of the Holy Spirit bearing witness by and with the Word in our hearts.<sup>11</sup>

---

<sup>7</sup> LUK 16:29 Abraham says to him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them. 31 And he said to him, If they do not hear Moses and the prophets, they will not be persuaded even though one rose from the dead. EPH 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief cornerstone. REV 22:18 For I testify to every man who hears the words of the prophecy of this book; If any man adds to these things, God will add to him the plagues that are written in this book: 19 And if any man takes away from the words of the book of this prophecy, God will take away his part out of the book of life, and out of the holy city, and from the things which are written in this book. 2TI 3:16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness.

<sup>8</sup> LUK 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded to them from all the scriptures the things concerning himself. 44 And he said to them, These are the words which I spoke to you while I was still with you: that all things must be fulfilled that were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me. ROM 3:2 Much in every way: chiefly, because the oracles of God were committed to them. 2PE 1:21 For the prophecy did not come in olden times by the will of man: but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit.

<sup>9</sup> 2PE 1:19 We also have a more sure word of prophecy; to which you would do well to take heed, like a light that shines in a dark place until the day dawns, and the day star arises in your hearts. 21 For the prophecy did not come in olden times by the will of man: but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit. 2TI 3:16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness. 1JO 5:9 If we receive the witness of men, the witness of God is greater: for this is the witness of God that he has testified of his Son. 1 TH 2:13 For this cause we also thank God without ceasing, because, when you received the word of God that you heard from us, you did not receive it as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which also effectually works in you who believe.

<sup>10</sup> 1TI 3:15 But if I stay long, that you may know how you ought to behave yourself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

<sup>11</sup> 1JO 2:20 But you have an unction from the Holy One, and you know all things. 27 But the anointing which you have received from him abides in you, and you do not need to have any man teach you: but as the same anointing teaches you all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it has taught you, you will abide in him. JOH 16:13 However when the Spirit of truth has come, he will guide you into all truth: for he will not speak from himself; instead, whatever he hears, that is what he will speak: and he will show you things to come. 14 He will glorify me: for he will receive of mine, and will show it to you. 1CO 2:10 But God has revealed them to us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. 11 For what does man know of the things of a man, except by the spirit of man

6. The whole counsel of God concerning all things necessary for His own glory and man's salvation, faith and life, is either expressly stated in Scripture, or by good and necessary inference may be deduced from Scripture. Nothing is to be added to Scripture at any time, whether by new revelations of the Spirit or by the traditions of men.<sup>12</sup>

Nevertheless, we acknowledge that the inward illumination of the Spirit of God is necessary for the saving understanding of whatever is revealed in the Word.<sup>13</sup> We also acknowledge that there are some circumstances concerning the worship of God and the government of the Church, things common to human activities and societies, which are to be governed by the light of nature and Christian prudence. This is to be done according to the general rules of the Word, and these rules are always to be observed.<sup>14</sup>

7. Not all things in Scripture are equally plain in themselves or equally clear to all.<sup>15</sup> Yet those things which are necessary to be known, believed, and observed for salvation are so clearly stated and explained in one place or another in Scripture, that not only the educated, but the uneducated, may gain a sufficient understanding of them by a proper use of ordinary means.<sup>16</sup>

8. The Old Testament in Hebrew (which was the native language of the people of God of old) and the New Testament in Greek (which at the time it was written was the language most generally known to the nations), were directly inspired by God and by His unique care and providence kept pure in all ages,<sup>17</sup> and are therefore authentic.<sup>18</sup> Thus in all controversies of religion the Church is to appeal to them as final.<sup>19</sup> Because these original tongues are not known by all the people of God, who have right to and a vital interest in the Scriptures, and are commanded to read and search them in the fear of God,<sup>20</sup> therefore the Scriptures are to be translated into the common language of every nation they come to.<sup>21</sup> That way, with the Word of God abundantly dwelling in all, they

---

that is in him? Even so, no man knows the things of God, except the Spirit of God. 12 Now we have not received the spirit of the world, but the spirit who is of God; so that we might know the things that are freely given to us by God. ISA 59:21 As for me, this is my covenant with them, says the Lord; My spirit that is upon you, and my words which I have put in your mouth, will not depart out of your mouth, nor out of the mouth of your seed, nor out of the mouth of your seed's seed, says the Lord, from now forward and forever.

<sup>12</sup> 2TI 3:15 And that from your childhood you have known the holy scriptures, which are able to make you wise to salvation through faith which is in Christ Jesus. 16 All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness: 17 That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly equipped for all good works. GAL 1:8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preaches any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed. 9 As we said before, so I now say again, if any man preaches any other gospel to you than what you have received, let him be accursed. 2TH 2:2 That you are not soon shaken in mind, nor troubled, whether by spirit, word, or letter as if from us, because the day of Christ is at hand.

<sup>13</sup> JOH 6:45 It is written in the prophets, And they will all be taught of God. Every man therefore that has heard, and has learned of the Father, comes to me. 1CO 2:9 But as it is written, Eye has not seen, nor ear heard, nor have entered into the heart of man, the things which God has prepared for those who love him. 10 But God has revealed them to us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. 11 For what does man know of the things of a man, except by the spirit of man that is in him? Even so no man knows the things of God, except the Spirit of God. 12 Now we have not received the spirit of the world, but the spirit who is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us by God.

<sup>14</sup> 1CO 11:13 Judge in yourselves: is it attractive for a woman pray to God uncovered? 14 Does not even nature itself teach you that, if a man has long hair, it is a shame to him? 14:26 How is it then, brethren? When you come together, every one of you has a psalm, has a doctrine, has a tongue, has a revelation, has an interpretation. Let all things be done for edifying. 40 Let all things be done decently and in order.

<sup>15</sup> 2PE 3:16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things: in which some things are hard to understand, which those who are unlearned and unstable twist, just as they do the other scriptures, to their own destruction.

<sup>16</sup> PSA 119:105 your word is a lamp for my feet, and a light for my path. 130 The entrance of your words gives light; it gives understanding to the simple.

<sup>17</sup> PSA 12:6-7 The words of the LORD are pure words, Like silver tried in a furnace of earth, Purified seven times. You shall keep them, O LORD, You shall preserve them from this generation forever.

<sup>18</sup> MAT 5:18 For truly I say to you, Till heaven and earth pass, not one jot or one tittle will pass from the law, till all is fulfilled.

<sup>19</sup> ISA 8:20 To the law and to the testimony: if they do not speak according to this word, it is because there is no light in them. ACT 15:15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written. JOH 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them you think you have eternal life: and they are what testify of me. 46 For had you believed Moses, you would have believed me: for he wrote of me.

<sup>20</sup> JOH 5:39 Search the scriptures; for in them you think you have eternal life: and they are what testify of me.

<sup>21</sup> 1CO 14:6 Now, brethren, if I come to you speaking with tongues, what will I profit you, unless I speak to you either by revelation, or by knowledge, or by prophesying, or by doctrine? 9 So you likewise, unless you utter by the tongue words that are easy to understand, how will it be known what is spoken? For you will speak into the air. 11 Therefore if I do not know the meaning of the voice, I will be a barbarian to the one who speaks, and the one who speaks will be a barbarian to me. 12 Even so you, being zealous of spiritual gifts, seek them so that you may excel in edifying the church. 24 But if all prophesy, and one comes in there who does not believe, or who is unlearned, he is convicted by all, he is judged by all: 27 If any man speaks in an unknown tongue, let it be by two, or at the most three,

may worship Him in an acceptable manner;<sup>22</sup> and through patience and the comfort of the Scriptures, they may have hope.<sup>23</sup>

9. The infallible rule of interpretation of Scripture is the Scripture itself. Therefore, when there is a question about the true and full meaning of any Scripture (which has but one meaning), that meaning must be searched out and ascertained by other places that speak more clearly.<sup>24</sup>

10. The supreme judge in all religious controversies can only be the Holy Spirit speaking in the Scripture. All decrees of councils, opinions of ancient writers, doctrines of men, and personal insights are to be examined by him. We are to rest in his decision.<sup>25</sup>

---

## Chapter 2 - God and the Holy Trinity

1. There is only one<sup>26</sup> living and true God,<sup>27</sup> who is infinite in being and perfection.<sup>28</sup> He is a most pure spirit,<sup>29</sup> invisible,<sup>30</sup> without body, parts,<sup>31</sup> or unruly emotions.<sup>32</sup> He is unchangeable,<sup>33</sup> boundless,<sup>34</sup> eternal,<sup>35</sup> and

---

and do that in order; and let one interpret. 28 But if there is no interpreter, let him keep silence in the church; and let him speak to himself, and to God.

<sup>22</sup> COL 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms, and hymns, and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

<sup>23</sup> ROM 15:4 For whatever things were written before this time, were written for our learning; so that we, through patience and comfort of the scriptures, might have hope.

<sup>24</sup> 2PE 1:20 Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is by any private interpretation. 21 For the prophecy did not come in olden times by the will of man; but holy men of God spoke as they were moved by the Holy Spirit. ACT 15:15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written, 16 After this I will return, and will build again the tabernacle of David, which has fallen down; and I will build again its ruins, and I will set it up.

<sup>25</sup> MAT 22:29 Jesus answered and said to them, you err, not knowing the scriptures, nor the power of God. 31 But concerning the resurrection of the dead, have you not read what was spoken to you by God, saying... EPH 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief cornerstone. ACT 28:25 And when they did not agree among themselves, they departed, after Paul had spoken one word: "Well spoke the Holy Spirit by Isaiah the prophet to our fathers..."

<sup>26</sup> DEU 6:4 Hear, O Israel; The Lord our God is one Lord. 1CO 8:4 Therefore, concerning the eating of those things that are offered in sacrifice to idols, we know that an idol is nothing in the world, and that there is no other God but one. 6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom all things are, and we are in him; and there is one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom all things are, and we are by him.

<sup>27</sup> 1TH 1:9 For they themselves show us what manner of entering in we had to you, and how you turned to God from idols, to serve the living and true God. JER 10:10 But the Lord is the true God, he is the living God, and an everlasting King.

<sup>28</sup> JOB 11:7 Can you find out God by searching? Can you find out the Almighty to perfection? 8 It is as high as heaven; what can you do? It is deeper than hell; what can you know? 9 Its measure is longer than the earth, and broader than the sea. 26:14 behold, these are portions of his ways; but how little a portion is heard of him? And who can understand the thunder of his power?

<sup>29</sup> JOH 4:24 God is a Spirit: and those who worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

<sup>30</sup> 1TI 1:17 Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen.

<sup>31</sup> DEU 4:15 Therefore take good heed yourselves; for you saw nothing like it on the day that the Lord spoke to you in Horeb out of the midst of the fire: 16 Lest you corrupt yourselves, and make a graven image, the likeness of any figure, the likeness of male or female. JOH 4:24 God is a Spirit: and those who worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth. LUK 24:39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: touch me, and see; for a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me have.

<sup>32</sup> ACT 14:11 And when the people saw what Paul had done, they lifted up their voices, saying in the speech of Lycaonia, The gods have come down to us in the likeness of men. 15 And saying, Sirs, why do you do these things? We also are men of similar passions as you, and we preach to you that you should turn from these vanities to the living God who made heaven, and earth, and the sea, and all things that are in them.

<sup>33</sup> JAM 1:17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and comes down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variableness, nor shadow of turning. MAL 3:6 For I am the Lord, I do not change; therefore you sons of Jacob are not consumed.

<sup>34</sup> 1KI 8:27 But will God indeed dwell on the earth? Behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain you; how much less this house that I have built? JER 23:23 Am I a God who is near, says the Lord, and not a God who is far off? 24 Can anyone hide himself in secret places that I will not see him? asks the Lord. Do I not fill heaven and earth? asks the Lord.

<sup>35</sup> PSA 90:2 Before the mountains were created, or ever you had formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, you are God. 1TI 1:17 Now to the King eternal, immortal, invisible, the only wise God, be honor and glory for ever and ever. Amen.

incomprehensible.<sup>36</sup> He is almighty,<sup>37</sup> most wise,<sup>38</sup> most holy,<sup>39</sup> most free,<sup>40</sup> and most absolute.<sup>41</sup> He works all things according to the counsel of His own unchangeable and most righteous will,<sup>42</sup> for His own glory.<sup>43</sup> He is most loving,<sup>44</sup> gracious, merciful, and long-suffering. He is abundant in goodness and truth, forgiving iniquity, transgression, and sin.<sup>45</sup> He rewards those who diligently seek Him;<sup>46</sup> He is also most just and terrifying in His judgments,<sup>47</sup> hating all sin.<sup>48</sup> By no means will he clear the guilty.<sup>49</sup>

2. God has all life,<sup>50</sup> glory,<sup>51</sup> goodness,<sup>52</sup> and blessedness<sup>53</sup> in and of Himself. He alone, in and for Himself, is all-sufficient. He does not need any creatures that He has made,<sup>54</sup> nor does he derive any glory from them.<sup>55</sup> Rather, he manifests His own glory in, by, to, and on them. He alone is the fountain of all being, of whom, through whom, and

---

<sup>36</sup> PSA 145:3 Great is the Lord, and greatly to be praised; and his greatness is unsearchable.

<sup>37</sup> GEN 17:1 And when Abram was ninety-nine years old, the Lord appeared to Abram, and said to him, I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be perfect. REV 4:8 And each of the four beasts had six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they did not rest day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, who was, and is, and is to come.

<sup>38</sup> ROM 16:27 To God only wise, be glory through Jesus Christ forever. Amen.

<sup>39</sup> ISA 6:3 And one cried to another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the Lord of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

REV 4:8 And each of the four beasts had six wings about him; and they were full of eyes within: and they did not rest day and night, saying, Holy, holy, holy, Lord God Almighty, who was, and is, and is to come.

<sup>40</sup> PSA 115:3 But our God is in the heavens: he has done whatever he has pleased.

<sup>41</sup> EXO 3:14 And God said to Moses, I Am That I Am: and he said, Thus will you say to the children of Israel, I Am has sent me to you.

<sup>42</sup> EPH 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will.

<sup>43</sup> PRO 16:4 The Lord has made all things for himself: yes, even the wicked for the day of evil. ROM 11:36 For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory forever. Amen.

<sup>44</sup> 1JO 4:8 One who does not love does not know God; for God is love. 16 And we have known and believed the love that God has toward us. God is love; and one who dwells in love dwells in God, and God in him.

<sup>45</sup> EXO 34:6 And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord, The Lord God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth, 7 Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and who will by no means clear the guilty; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, to the third and to the fourth generation.

<sup>46</sup> HEB 11:6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for one who comes to God must believe that he exists, and that he is a rewarder of those who diligently seek him.

<sup>47</sup> NEH 9:32 Now therefore, our God, the great, the mighty, and the terrible God, who keeps covenant and mercy, do not let all the trouble seem little before you that has come upon us, on our kings, on our princes, and on our priests, and on our prophets, and on our fathers, and on all your people, since the time of the kings of Assyria to this day. 33 However you are just in all that is brought upon us; for you have done right, but we have done wickedly.

<sup>48</sup> PSA 5:5 The foolish will not stand in your sight: you hate all workers of iniquity. 6 You will destroy those who speak falsehood: the Lord will abhor the bloody and deceitful man.

<sup>49</sup> NAH 1:2 God is jealous, and the Lord revenges; the Lord revenges, and is furious; the Lord will take vengeance on his adversaries, and he reserves wrath for his enemies. 3 The Lord is slow to anger, and great in power, and will not at all acquit the wicked: the Lord has his way in the whirlwind and in the storm, and the clouds are the dust of his feet. EXO 34:7 Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear the guilty; visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children, and upon the children's children, to the third and to the fourth generation.

<sup>50</sup> JOH 5:26 For just as the Father has life in himself; so he has given to the Son to have life in himself.

<sup>51</sup> ACT 7:2 And he said, Men, brethren, and fathers, hearken; The God of glory appeared to our father Abraham, when he was in Mesopotamia, before he dwelt in Horan.

<sup>52</sup> PSA 119:68 You are good, and do good; teach me your statutes.

<sup>53</sup> 1TI 6:15 What in his times he will show, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords. ROM 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and from whom Christ came as concerns the flesh, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen.

<sup>54</sup> ACT 17:24 God that made the world and all things in it, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in temples made with hands; 25 Nor is he worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed anything, seeing he gives life to all, and breath, and all things.

<sup>55</sup> JOB 22:2 Can a man be profitable to God, as one who is wise may be profitable to himself? 3 Is it any pleasure to the Almighty that you are righteous? Or is it gain to him that you make your ways perfect?

for whom all things exist.<sup>56</sup> He has absolute sovereignty over them, to do by them, for them, or to them, whatever he pleases.<sup>57</sup> In His sight all things are open and obvious.<sup>58</sup> His knowledge is infinite, infallible, and independent of his creatures,<sup>59</sup> so that for him nothing is contingent or uncertain.<sup>60</sup> He is most holy in all His counsels, in all His works, and in all His commands.<sup>61</sup> Angels and men, and every other creature, owe him whatever worship, service, or obedience He is pleased to require of them.<sup>62</sup>

3. In the unity of the Godhead there are three persons, of one substance, power, and eternity: God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit.<sup>63</sup> The Father is from none, neither begotten nor proceeding; the Son is eternally begotten of the Father;<sup>64</sup> the Holy Spirit eternally proceeds from the Father and the Son.<sup>65</sup>

---

## Chapter 3 - God's Eternal Decree

1. God, from all eternity, by the most wise and holy counsel of His own will, freely, and unchangeably ordained whatever comes to pass.<sup>66</sup> Yet he is not thereby the author of sin,<sup>67</sup> nor does he force his creatures to act against their wills; nor is the liberty or contingency of second causes taken away, but rather established.<sup>68</sup>

---

<sup>56</sup> ROM 11:36 For of him, and through him, and for him, are all things: to whom be glory forever. Amen.

<sup>57</sup> REV 4:11 You are worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honor and power: for you have created all things, and for your pleasure they are and were created. ITI 6:15 Which in his times he will show, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords. DAN 4:25 That they will drive you from men, and your dwelling will be with the beasts of the field, and they will make you eat grass as oxen, and they will wet you with the dew of heaven, and seven times will pass over you, till you know that the most High rules in the kingdom of men, and gives it to whomever he will. 35 And all the inhabitants of the earth are considered nothing: and he does according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say to him, What are you doing?

<sup>58</sup> HEB 4:13 Nor is there any creature that is not visible in his sight: but all things are naked and opened to the eyes of him with whom we have to do.

<sup>59</sup> ROM 11:33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out! 34 For who has known the mind of the Lord? Or who has been his counsellor? PSA 147:5 Great is our Lord, and of great power: his understanding is infinite.

<sup>60</sup> ACT 15:18 Known to God are all his works from the beginning of the world. EZE 11:5 And the Spirit of the Lord fell upon me, and said to me, Speak; Thus says the Lord; Thus have you said, O house of Israel: for I know the things that come into your mind, every one of them.

<sup>61</sup> PSA 145:17 The Lord is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works. ROM 7:12 Which is why the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, and just, and good.

<sup>62</sup> REV 5:12 Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain, to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honor, and glory, and blessing. 13 And every creature which is in heaven, and on the earth, and under the earth, and such as are in the sea, and all that are in them, I heard saying, Blessing, and honor, and glory, and power, be to him that sits upon the throne, and to the Lamb for ever and ever. 14 And the four beasts said, Amen. And the four and twenty elders fell down and worshipped him who lives for ever and ever.

<sup>63</sup> 1JO 5:7 For there are three who bear record in heaven, the Father, the Word, and the Holy Spirit: and these three are one. MAT 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, behold, the heavens were opened to him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him: 17 And behold a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. 2CO 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit, be with you all. Amen.

<sup>64</sup> JOH 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth. 15 John bore witness of him, and cried, saying, This was the one of whom I spoke, The one who comes after me is preferred before me: for he was before me. 18 No man has seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, who is in the bosom of the Father, has declared him.

<sup>65</sup> JOH 15:26 But when the Comforter has come, whom I will send to you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceeds from the Father, he will testify of me. GAL 4:6 And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

<sup>66</sup> EPH 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will. ROM 11:33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out! HEB 6:17 For this reason God, willing more abundantly to show to the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath. ROM 9:15 For he says to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion. 18 Therefore he has mercy on whom he will have mercy, and he hardens whom he will.



2. Although God knows whatever may or can come to pass under all conceivable conditions;<sup>69</sup> yet He has not decreed anything because He foresaw it in the future, or as something that would come to pass under such conditions.<sup>70</sup>

3. By God's decree, to manifest His glory, some men and angels<sup>71</sup> are predestined to everlasting life, and others are foreordained to everlasting death.<sup>72</sup>

4. These angels and men, thus predestined, and foreordained, are individually and unchangeably designated. Their number is so certain and definite, that it cannot be either increased or decreased.<sup>73</sup>

5. God predestined these people to life before the foundation of the world was laid, according to His eternal and unchangeable purpose, and the secret counsel and good pleasure of His will. He has chosen them in Christ to everlasting glory<sup>74</sup> out of His free grace and love alone. It was not because he foresaw their faith, or good works, or

---

<sup>67</sup> JAM 1:13 Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted by God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, nor does he tempt any man. 17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and comes down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variableness, nor shadow of turning. IJO 1:5 This then is the message which we have heard of him, and declare to you, that God is light, and in him there is no darkness at all.

<sup>68</sup> ACT 2:23 Being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain him. MAT 17:12 But I say to you, That Elias has come already, and they did not know him, but have done to him whatever they wanted. Likewise, the Son of man will also suffer by them.. Acts 4:27-28 Indeed Herod and Pontius Pilate met together with the Gentiles and the people of Israel in this city to conspire against your holy servant Jesus, whom you anointed. 28 They did what your power and will had decided beforehand should happen. JOH 19:11 Jesus answered, You could have no power at all against me, unless it were given you from above: therefore the one who delivered me to you has the greater sin. PRO 16:33 The lot is cast into the lap; but the whole disposing of it is of the Lord.

<sup>69</sup> ACT 15:18 Known to God are all his works from the beginning of the world. ISA 23:11 Will the men of Keilah deliver me up into his hand? Will Saul come down, as your servant has heard? O Lord God of Israel, I beseech you, tell your servant. And the Lord said, He will come down. 12 Then David said, Will the men of Keilah deliver me and my men into the hand of Saul? And the Lord said, They will deliver you up. MAT 11:21 Woe to you, Chorazin! woe to you, Bethsaida! For if the mighty works which were done in you had been done in Tyre and Sidon, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. 23 And you, Capernaum, who are exalted to heaven, will be brought down to hell: for if the mighty works which have been done in you had been done in Sodom, it would have remained until this day.

<sup>70</sup> ROM 9:11 (For the children not yet being born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calls;) 13 As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau I have hated. 16 So then it is not of the one who wills, nor of the one who runs, but of God who shows mercy. 18 Therefore he has mercy on whom he will have mercy, and he hardens whom he will.

<sup>71</sup> 1TI 5:21 I charge you before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, and the elect angels, that you observe these things without preferring one before another, doing nothing by partiality. MAT 25:41 Then he will say also to them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels.

<sup>72</sup> ROM 9:22 What if God, willing to show his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted for destruction: 23 And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared to glory. EPH 1:5 Having predestined us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will, 6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, in which he has made us accepted in the beloved. PRO 16:4 The Lord has made all things for himself: yes, even the wicked for the day of evil.

<sup>73</sup> 2TI 2:19 Nevertheless the foundation of God stands sure, having this seal: The Lord knows those who are his. And, Let every one that names the name of Christ depart from iniquity. JOH 13:18 I do not speak of you all: I know whom I have chosen: but so that the scripture may be fulfilled, The one who eats bread with me has lifted up his heel against me.

<sup>74</sup> EPH 1:4 Just as he has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: 9 Having made known to us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he has purposed in himself: 11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will. ROM 8:30 Moreover those whom he predestined, he also called: and those whom he called, he also justified: and those whom he justified, he also glorified. 2TI 1:9 Who has saved us, and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began. 1TH 5:9 For God has not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ.

perseverance, or anything else in the creature, as conditions or causes moving Him to do this;<sup>75</sup> all of this is to the praise of His glorious grace.<sup>76</sup>

6. As God has appointed the elect to glory, so he has, by the eternal and most free purpose of His will, foreordained all the means to that end. Therefore, those who are elected, being fallen in Adam, are redeemed by Christ,<sup>77</sup> and are effectually called to faith in Christ by His Spirit working in due season. They are justified, adopted, sanctified,<sup>78</sup> and kept by His power, through faith, to salvation.<sup>79</sup> No others are redeemed by Christ. Only the elect are effectually called, justified, adopted, sanctified, and saved.<sup>80</sup>

7. God was satisfied to pass by the rest of mankind according to the unsearchable counsel of His own will. By His own will He extends or withholds mercy as He pleases for the glory of His sovereign power over His creatures. He ordained them to dishonor and wrath for their sin, to the praise of His glorious justice.<sup>81</sup>

8. The doctrine of this high mystery of predestination is to be handled with special prudence and care.<sup>82</sup> This is so that men may be assured of their eternal election from the certainty of their effectual calling, heeding the will of God

---

<sup>75</sup> ROM 9:11 (For the children not yet being born, neither having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calls;) 13 As it is written, Jacob have I loved, but Esau I have hated. 16 So then it is not of the one who wills, nor of the one who runs, but of God who shows mercy. EPH 1:4 Just as he has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love. 9 Having made known to us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he has purposed in himself.

<sup>76</sup> IPE 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, to obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace to you, and peace, be multiplied. EPH 1:4 Just as he has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love: 5 Having predestined us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will. 2:10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to good works, which God has before ordained that we should walk in them. 2TH 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God has from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.

<sup>77</sup> 1TH 5:9 For God has not appointed us to wrath, but to obtain salvation by our Lord Jesus Christ, 10 Who died for us, that, whether we wake or sleep, we should live together with him. TIT 2:14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works.

<sup>78</sup> ROM 8:30 Moreover those whom he predestined, he also called: and those whom he called, he also justified: and those whom he justified, he also glorified. EPH 1:5 Having predestined us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will. 2TH 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God has from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.

<sup>79</sup> IPE 1:5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith to salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

<sup>80</sup> JOH 17:9 I pray for them: I do not pray for the world, but for those you have given me; for they are yours. ROM 8:28 And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to his purpose. JOH 6:64 But there are some of you who do not believe. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that did not believe, and who should betray him. 65 And he said, Therefore I said to you, that no man can come to me, unless it was given to him by my Father. 10:26 But you do not believe because you are not of my sheep, as I said to you. 8:47 The one who is of God hears God's words: you therefore do not hear them, because you are not of God. 1JO 2:19 They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.

<sup>81</sup> MAT 11:25 At that time Jesus answered and said, I thank you, O Father, Lord of heaven and earth, because you have hid these things from the wise and prudent, and have revealed them to babes. 26 Even so, Father: for so it seemed good in your sight. ROM 9:17 For the scripture says to Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose I have raised you up, that I might show my power in you, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth. 18 Therefore he has mercy on whom he will have mercy, and he hardens whom he will. 21 Does the potter not have power over the clay, of the same lump to make one vessel for honor, and another for dishonor? 22 What if God, willing to show his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted for destruction. 2TI 2:19 Nevertheless the foundation of God stands sure, having this seal: The Lord knows those who are his. And, Let every one that names the name of Christ depart from iniquity. 20 But in a great house there are not only vessels of gold and of silver, but also of wood and of earth; and some to honor, and some to dishonor. JUD 4 For there are certain men who crept in unawares, who were before of old ordained to this condemnation, ungodly men, turning the grace of our God into lasciviousness, and denying the only Lord God, and our Lord Jesus Christ. IPE 2:8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offense, even to those who stumble at the word, being disobedient: to which also they were appointed.

<sup>82</sup> ROM 9:20 No but, O man, who are you that replies against God? Will the thing formed say to him that formed it, Why have you made me thus? 11:33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out! DEU 29:29 The secret things belong to the Lord our God: but those things which are revealed belong to us and to our children forever, that we may do all the words of this law.

revealed in His Word, and yielding obedience to it.<sup>83</sup> In this way, this doctrine will provide reason for praise, reverence, and admiration of God.<sup>84</sup> And it will provide reason for humility, diligence, and abundant consolation to all those who sincerely obey the Gospel.<sup>85</sup>

---

## Chapter 4 - Creation

1. In the beginning, it pleased God the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit,<sup>86</sup> to create (or make out of nothing) the world and everything in it, whether visible or invisible, in the space of six days, and all very good.<sup>87</sup> This was done to manifest the glory of His eternal power, wisdom, and goodness.<sup>88</sup>

2. After God had made all other creatures, He created mankind, male and female.<sup>89</sup> He made them with rational and immortal souls,<sup>90</sup> endowed with knowledge, righteousness, and true holiness, after His own image.<sup>91</sup> They had the law of God written in their hearts,<sup>92</sup> and power to fulfill it.<sup>93</sup> And yet, there was a possibility of transgressing, because they were left to the liberty of their own will, which was subject to change.<sup>94</sup> Besides this law written in

---

<sup>83</sup> 2PE 1:10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall.

<sup>84</sup> EPH 1:6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, in which he has made us accepted in the beloved. ROM 11:33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out!

<sup>85</sup> ROM 11:5 Even so then at this present time there is also a remnant according to the election of grace. 6 And if by grace, then is it no more of works: otherwise grace is no more grace. But if it is of works, then is it no more grace: otherwise work is no more work. 20 For when you were the servants of sin, you were free from righteousness. 2PE 1:10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall. ROM 8:33 Who will lay anything to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifies. LUK 10:20 Notwithstanding do not rejoice in this, that the spirits are subject to you; but rather rejoice, because your names are written in heaven.

<sup>86</sup> HEB 1:2 Has in these last days spoken to us by his Son, whom he has appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds. JOH 1:2 The same was in the beginning with God. 3 All things were made by him; and without him was not anything made that was made. GEN 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. JOB 26:13 By his spirit he has garnished the heavens; his hand has formed the crooked serpent. 33:4 The Spirit of God has made me, and the breath of the Almighty has given me life.

<sup>87</sup> All of Genesis 1; HEB 11:3 Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which appear. COL 1:16 For by him all things were created that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they are thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him. ACT 17:24 God that made the world and all things in it, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in temples made with hands.

<sup>88</sup> ROM 1:20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse. JER 10:12 He has made the earth by his power, he has established the world by his wisdom, and has stretched out the heavens by his discretion. PSA 104:24 O Lord, how manifold are your works! In wisdom you have made them all: the earth is full of your riches. 33:5 He loves righteousness and judgment: the earth is full of the goodness of the Lord. 6 By the word of the Lord were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth.

<sup>89</sup> GEN 1:27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them.

<sup>90</sup> GEN 2:7 And the Lord God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath of life; and man became a living soul. ECC 12:7 Then the dust will return to the earth as it was: and the spirit will return to God who gave it. LUK 23:43 And Jesus said to him, Truly I say to you, Today you will be with me in paradise. MAT 10:28 And do not fear those who kill the body, but are not able to kill the soul: but rather fear him which is able to destroy both soul and body in hell.

<sup>91</sup> GEN 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth. COL 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him. EPH 4:24 And that you put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

<sup>92</sup> ROM 2:14 For when the Gentiles, who do not have the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, not having the law, are a law to themselves: 15 Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another.

<sup>93</sup> ECC 7:29 behold, only this have I found, that God has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.

<sup>94</sup> GEN 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit, and ate, and gave also to her husband with her; and he ate. ECC 7:29 behold, only this have I found, that God has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions.

their hearts, they received a command not to eat of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil.<sup>95</sup> As long as they kept this command, they were happy in their communion with God, and they had dominion over the creatures.<sup>96</sup>

---

## Chapter 5 - Providence

1. God, the great Creator of all things, upholds,<sup>97</sup> directs, disposes, and governs all creatures, actions, and things,<sup>98</sup> from the greatest to the least,<sup>99</sup> by His most wise and holy providence<sup>100</sup> according to His infallible foreknowledge,<sup>101</sup> and the free and unchangeable counsel of His own will.<sup>102</sup> This is to the praise of the glory of His wisdom, power, justice, goodness, and mercy.<sup>103</sup>

2. All things come to pass unchangeably and infallibly according to the foreknowledge and decree of God, which is the first Cause.<sup>104</sup> Yet, by the same providence, He orders them to occur according to the nature of second causes, whether necessarily, freely, or contingently.<sup>105</sup>

---

<sup>95</sup> GEN 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. 3:8 And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God among the trees of the garden. 9 And the Lord God called to Adam, and said to him, Where are you? 10 And he said, I heard your voice in the garden, and I was afraid, because I was naked; and I hid myself. 11 And he said, Who told you that you were naked? Have you eaten of the tree, whereof I commanded you that you should not eat? 23 Therefore the Lord God sent him out of the garden of Eden, to till the ground from where he was taken.

<sup>96</sup> GEN 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth. 28 And God blessed them, and God said to them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth.

<sup>97</sup> HEB 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down at the right hand of the Majesty on high.

<sup>98</sup> DAN 4:34 And at the end of the days I Nebuchadnezzar lifted up my eyes to heaven, and my understanding returned to me, and I blessed the most High, and I praised and honored him who lives forever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his kingdom is from generation to generation: 35 And all the inhabitants of the earth are considered nothing: and he does according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say to him, What are you doing? PSA 135:6 Whatever the Lord pleased, that is what he did in heaven, and in earth, in the seas, and all deep places. ACT 17:25 Nor is he worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed anything, seeing he gives life to all, and breath, and all things; 26 And has made of one blood all nations of men, to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation; 27 That they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he is not far from every one of us: 28 For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring. JOB 38-41.

<sup>99</sup> MAT 10:29 Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? And one of them will not fall on the ground without your Father. 30 But the very hairs of your head are all numbered. 31 Do not fear therefore, you are of more value than many sparrows.

<sup>100</sup> PRO 15:3 The eyes of the Lord are in every place, beholding the evil and the good. PSA 104:24 O Lord, how manifold are your works! In wisdom you have made them all: the earth is full of your riches. 145:17 The Lord is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works.

<sup>101</sup> ACT 15:18 Known to God are all his works from the beginning of the world. PSA 94:8 Understand, you brutish among the people: and you fools, when will you be wise? 9 The one who planted the ear, will he not hear? The one who formed the eye, will he not see? 10 The one who chastises the heathen, will not he correct? The one who teaches man knowledge, will not he know? 11 The Lord knows the thoughts of man, that they are vanity.

<sup>102</sup> EPH 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will. PSA 33:10 The Lord brings the counsel of the heathen to nothing: he makes the devices of the people of no effect. 11 The counsel of the Lord stands forever, the thoughts of his heart to all generations.

<sup>103</sup> ISA 63:14 As a beast goes down into the valley, the Spirit of the Lord caused him to rest: so did you lead your people, to make yourself a glorious name. EPH 3:10 so that through the church the manifold wisdom of God might now be made known to the rulers and authorities in the heavenly places. ROM 9:17 For the scripture says to Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose I have raised you up, that I might show my power in you, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth. GEN 45:7 And God sent me before you to preserve you as a posterity in the earth, and to save your lives by a great deliverance. PSA 145:7 They will abundantly utter the memory of your great goodness, and will sing of your righteousness.

<sup>104</sup> ACT 2:23 Being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken and by wicked hands have crucified and slain him.

<sup>105</sup> GEN 8:22 While the earth remains, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night will not cease. JER 31:35 Thus says the Lord, which gives the sun for a light by day, and the ordinances of the moon and of the stars for a light by night, which divides the sea when the waves of it roar; The Lord of hosts is his name: EXO 21:13 And if a man does not lie in wait,

3. In His ordinary providence, God makes use of means,<sup>106</sup> yet he is free to work without,<sup>107</sup> above,<sup>108</sup> and against them,<sup>109</sup> as he pleases.

4. The almighty power, unsearchable wisdom, and infinite goodness of God are so manifest in His providence, that it extends even to the first fall and all other sins of angels and men.<sup>110</sup> This is not by bare permission,<sup>111</sup> but by what places a most wise and powerful boundary on them,<sup>112</sup> and what otherwise orders and governs them in a varied administration, to His own holy ends.<sup>113</sup> Yet, the sinfulness of it comes from the creature alone, and not from God. Because he is most holy and righteous, he neither is nor can be the author or approver of sin.<sup>114</sup>

---

but God delivers him into his hand; then I will appoint you a place where he will flee. DEU 19:5 As when a man goes into the wood with his neighbor to chop wood, and his hand fetches a stroke with the axe to cut down the tree, and the head slips from the helve, and lights upon his neighbor, so that he dies; he will flee to one of those cities, and live: 1KI 22:28 And Micaiah said, If you return at all in peace, the Lord has not spoken by me. And he said, Hearken, O people, every one of you. 34 And a certain man drew a bow at a venture, and struck the king of Israel between the joints of the harness: for which he said to the driver of his chariot, Turn your hand, and carry me out of the host; for I am wounded. ISA 10:6 I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets. 7 However he does not mean so, nor does his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off not a few nations.

<sup>106</sup> ACT 27:31 Paul said to the centurion and to the soldiers, Except these abide in the ship, you cannot be saved. 44 And the rest, some on boards, and some on broken pieces of the ship. And so it came to pass, that they escaped all safe to land. ISA 55:10 For just as the rain comes down, and the snow from heaven, and returns not there, but waters the earth, and makes it produce and bud, that it may give seed to the sower, and bread to the eater: 11 So will my word be that goes forth out of my mouth: it will not return to me void, but it will accomplish what I please, and it will prosper in the thing to which I sent it. HOS 2:21 And it will come to pass in that day, I will hear, says the Lord, I will hear the heavens, and they will hear the earth; 22 And the earth will hear the corn, and the wine, and the oil; and they will hear Jezreel.

<sup>107</sup> HOS 1:7 But I will have mercy upon the house of Judah, and will save them by the Lord their God, and will not save them by bow, nor by sword, nor by battle, by horses, nor by horsemen. MAT 4:4 But he answered and said, It is written, Man will not live by bread alone, but by every word that proceeds out of the mouth of God. JOB 34:10 Therefore hearken to me, you men of understanding: far be it from God, that he should do wickedness; and from the Almighty, that he should commit iniquity.

<sup>108</sup> ROM 4:19 And being not weak in faith, he did not consider his own body now dead, when he was about a hundred years old, nor yet the deadness of Sara's womb: 20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God; 21 And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.

<sup>109</sup> 2KI 6:6 And the man of God said, Where fell it? And he showed him the place. And he cut down a stick, and cast it in there; and the iron did swim. DAN 3:27 And the princes, governors, and captains, and the king's counsellors, being gathered together, saw these men, upon whose bodies the fire had no power, nor was a hair of their head singed, nor were their coats changed, nor the smell of fire had passed on them.

<sup>110</sup> ROM 11:32 For God has concluded them all in unbelief, that he might have mercy upon all. 33 O the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and knowledge of God! How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways past finding out! 34 For who has known the mind of the Lord? or who has been his counsellor? 2SA 24:1 And again the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel, and he moved David against them to say, Go, number Israel and Judah. 1CH 21:1 And Satan stood up against Israel, and provoked David to number Israel. 1KI 22:22 And the Lord said to him, Wherewith? And he said, I will go forth, and I will be a lying spirit in the mouth of all his prophets. And he said, You will persuade him, and prevail also: go forth, and do so. 23 Now therefore, behold, the Lord has put a lying spirit in the mouth of all these your prophets, and the Lord has spoken evil concerning you. 1CH 10:4 Then said Saul to his armourbearer, Draw your sword, and thrust me through therewith; lest these uncircumcised come and abuse me. But his armourbearer would not; for he was sore afraid. So Saul took a sword, and fell upon it. 2SA 16:10 And the king said, What have I to do with you, you sons of Zeruiah? so let him curse, because the Lord has said to him, Curse David. Who will then say, Why have you done so? ACT 2:23 Being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain him: Acts 4:27-28 Indeed Herod and Pontius Pilate met together with the Gentiles and the people of Israel in this city to conspire against your holy servant Jesus, whom you anointed. 28 They did what your power and will had decided beforehand should happen.

<sup>111</sup> ACT 14:16 Who in times past suffered all nations to walk in their own ways.

<sup>112</sup> PSA 76:10 Surely the wrath of man will praise you: the remainder of wrath will you restrain. 2KI 19:28 Because your rage against me and your tumult has come up into my ears, therefore I will put my hook in your nose, and my bridle in your lips, and I will turn you back by the way by which did you come.

<sup>113</sup> GEN 50:20 But as for you, you thought evil against me; but God meant it to good, to bring to pass, as it is this day, to save much people alive. ISA 10:6 I will send him against a hypocritical nation, and against the people of my wrath will I give him a charge, to take the spoil, and to take the prey, and to tread them down like the mire of the streets. 7 However he does not mean so, nor does his heart think so; but it is in his heart to destroy and cut off nations not a few. 12 Which is why it will come to pass, that when the Lord has performed his whole work upon mount Zion and on Jerusalem, I will punish the fruit of the stout heart of the king of Assyria, and the glory of his high looks.

<sup>114</sup> JAM 1:13 Let no man say when he is tempted, I am tempted by God: for God cannot be tempted with evil, nor tempts he any man: 14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. 17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and comes down from the Father of lights, with whom there is no variableness, nor shadow of turning. 1JO 2:16 For all that is in the world, the lust of the flesh, and the lust of the eyes, and the pride of life, is not of the Father, but is of the world. PSA 50:21 These things

5. The most wise, righteous, and gracious God often leaves His own children to various temptations and to the corruption of their own hearts for a season. He does this to chastise them for their past sins, or to uncover for them the hidden strength of corruption and deceitfulness that is in their hearts. This is to humble them,<sup>115</sup> and to raise them to a closer and constant dependence on himself for their support. It makes them more watchful against all future occasions of sin, and it has a number of other just and holy purposes.<sup>116</sup>

6. God withholds His grace from those wicked and ungodly men whom he, as a righteous Judge, blinds and hardens because of their past sins.<sup>117</sup> By his grace they might have been enlightened in their understanding, and it might have worked in their hearts.<sup>118</sup> He also sometimes takes away the gifts which they had,<sup>119</sup> and exposes them to things that their corrupt nature turns into occasions for sinning.<sup>120</sup> He also gives them over to their own lusts, the temptations of the world, and the power of Satan,<sup>121</sup> by which they harden themselves, those same means that God uses to soften others.<sup>122</sup>

---

have you done, and I kept silence; you thoughtest that I was altogether such an one as yourself: but I will reprove you, and set them in order before your eyes.

<sup>115</sup> 2CH 32:25 But Hezekiah rendered not again according to the benefit done to him; for his heart was lifted up: therefore there was wrath upon him, and upon Judah and Jerusalem.

26 Notwithstanding Hezekiah humbled himself for the pride of his heart, both he and the inhabitants of Jerusalem, so that the wrath of the Lord came not upon them in the days of Hezekiah. 31 However in the business of the ambassadors of the princes of Babylon, who sent to him to inquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all that was in his heart. 2SA 24:1 And again the anger of the Lord was kindled against Israel, and he moved David against them to say, Go, number Israel and Judah.

<sup>116</sup> 2CO 12:7 And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure. 8 For this thing I besought the Lord thrice, that it might depart from me. 9 And he said to me, My grace is sufficient for you: for my strength is made perfect in weakness. Most gladly therefore will I rather glory in my infirmities, that the power of Christ may rest upon me. PSA 77:1 I cried to God with my voice, even to God with my voice; and he gave ear to me. 10 And I said, This is my infirmity: but I will remember the years of the right hand of the most High. 12 I will meditate also of all your work, and talk of your doings. (cf. MAR 14:66-72 with JOH 21:15 So when they had dined, Jesus says to Simon Peter, Simon, son of Jonas, love you me more than these? He says to him, Yes, Lord; you knowest that I love you. He says to him, Feed my lambs. 16 He says to him again the second time, Simon, son of Jonas, love you me? He says to him, Yes, Lord; you knowest that I love you. He says to him, Feed my sheep. 17 He says to him the third time, Simon, son of Jonas, love you me? Peter was grieved because he said to him the third time, Love you me? And he said to him, Lord, you knowest all things; you knowest that I love you. Jesus says to him, Feed my sheep.

<sup>117</sup> ROM 1:24 Which is why God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonor their own bodies between themselves. 26 For this cause God gave them up to vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into what is against nature. 28 And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient. 11:7 What then? Israel has not obtained what he seeks for; but the election has obtained it, and the rest were blinded 8 (Just as it is written, God has given them the spirit of slumber, eyes that they should not see, and ears that they should not hear;) to this day.

<sup>118</sup> DEU 29:4 Yet the Lord has not given you a heart to perceive, and eyes to see, and ears to hear, to this day.

<sup>119</sup> MAT 13:12 For whoever has, to him will be given, and he will have more abundance: but whoever does not have, from him will be taken away even that he has. 25:29 For to every one that has will be given, and he will have abundance: but from him that does not have will be taken away even what he has.

<sup>120</sup> DEU 2:30 But Sihon king of Heshbon would not let us pass by him: for the Lord your God hardened his spirit, and made his heart obstinate, that he might deliver him into your hand, as appears this day. 2KI 8:12 And Hazael said, Why weeps my lord? And he answered, Because I know the evil that you will do to the children of Israel: their strong holds will you set on fire, and their young men will you slay with the sword, and will dash their children, and rip up their women with child. 13 And Hazael said, But what, is your servant a dog, that he should do this great thing? And Elisha answered, The Lord has showed me that you will be king over Syria.

<sup>121</sup> PSA 81:11 But my people would not hearken to my voice; and Israel would none of me. 12 So I gave them up to their own hearts' lust: and they walked in their own counsels. 2TH 2:10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in those who perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved. 11 And for this cause God will send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie: 12 That they all might be damned who did not believe the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

<sup>122</sup> EXO 7:3 And I will harden Pharaoh's heart, and multiply my signs and my wonders in the land of Egypt. 8:15 But when Pharaoh saw that there was respite, he hardened his heart, and hearkened not to them; as the Lord had said. 32 And Pharaoh hardened his heart at this time also, nor would he let the people go. 2CO 2:15 For we are to God a sweet savor of Christ, in those who are saved, and in those who perish: 16 To the one we are the savor of death to death; and to the other the savor of life to life. And who is sufficient for these things? ISA 8:14 And he will be for a sanctuary; but for a stone of stumbling and for a rock of offense to both the houses of Israel, for a gin and for a snare to the inhabitants of Jerusalem. 1PE 2:7 To you therefore which believe he is precious: but to those who be disobedient, the stone which the builders disallowed, the same is made the head of the corner, 8 And a stone of stumbling, and a rock of offense, even to those who stumble at the word, being disobedient: to which also they were appointed. ISA 6:9 And he said, Go, and tell this people, Hear you indeed, but understand not; and see you indeed, but perceive not. 10 Make the heart of this people fat, and make their ears heavy, and shut their eyes; lest they see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and convert, and be healed.

7. As the providence of God generally reaches to all creatures, so, in a very special way, it takes care of His Church and disposes all things for its good.<sup>123</sup>

---

## Chapter 6 - The Fall of Man, Sin, and its Punishment

1. Our first parents, being seduced by the subtlety and temptation of Satan, sinned in eating the forbidden fruit.<sup>124</sup> God was pleased to permit this sin of theirs according to His wise and holy counsel, because his purpose was to glorify himself through it.<sup>125</sup>

2. By this sin they fell from their original righteousness and communion, with God,<sup>126</sup> and so became dead in sin,<sup>127</sup> and wholly defiled in all the parts and faculties of soul and body.<sup>128</sup>

3. Because they were the root of all mankind, the guilt of this sin was imputed to all their posterity.<sup>129</sup> The same death in sin and corrupted nature was conveyed to all those descending from them by ordinary generation.<sup>130</sup>

---

ACT 28:26 Saying, Go to this people, and say, Hearing you will hear, and will not understand; and seeing you will see, and not perceive: 27 For the heart of this people is waxed gross, and their ears are dull of hearing, and their eyes have they closed; and they should see with their eyes, and hear with their ears, and understand with their heart, and should be converted, and I should heal them.

<sup>123</sup> 1TI 4:10 For therefore we both labor and suffer reproach, because we trust in the living God, who is the Savior of all men, specially of those that believe. AMO 9:8 Behold, the eyes of the Lord God are upon the sinful kingdom, and I will destroy it from off the face of the earth; saving that I will not utterly destroy the house of Jacob, says the Lord. 9 For, behold, I will command, and I will sift the house of Israel among all nations, like as corn is sifted in a sieve, yet will not the least grain fall upon the earth. ROM 8:28 And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to his purpose. ISA 43:3 For I am the Lord your God, the Holy One of Israel, your Savior: I gave Egypt for your ransom, Ethiopia and Seba for you. 4 Since you were precious in my sight, you have been honorable, and I have loved you: therefore will I give men for you, and people for your life. 5 Do not fear: for I am with you: I will bring your seed from the east, and gather you from the west. 14 Thus says the Lord, your redeemer, the Holy One of Israel; For your sake I have sent to Babylon, and have brought down all their nobles, and the Chaldeans, whose cry is in the ships.

<sup>124</sup> GEN 3:13 And the Lord God said to the woman, What is this that you have done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I ate. 2CO 11:3 But I fear, lest by any means, as the serpent beguiled Eve through his subtlety, so your minds should be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

<sup>125</sup> ROM 11:32 For God has enclosed them all in unbelief, so that he might have mercy on all.

<sup>126</sup> GEN 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit, and ate, and gave also to her husband with her; and he ate. 7 And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons. 8 And they heard the voice of the Lord God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the Lord God among the trees of the garden. ECC 7:29 behold, only this have I found, that God has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions. ROM 3:23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God.

<sup>127</sup> GEN 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. EPH 2:1 And you he has quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins.

<sup>128</sup> TIT 1:15 To the pure all things are pure: but to those who are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled. GEN 6:5 And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. JER 17:9 The heart is deceitful above all things, and desperately wicked: who can know it? ROM 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one: 11 There is none that understands, there is none that seeks after God. 12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that does good, no, not one. 13 Their throat is an open sepulchre; with their tongues they have used deceit; the poison of asps is under their lips: 14 Whose mouth is full of cursing and bitterness: 15 Their feet are swift to shed blood: 16 Destruction and misery are in their ways: 17 And the way of peace have they not known: 18 There is no fear of God before their eyes.

<sup>129</sup> GEN 1:27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. 28 And God blessed them, and God said to them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moves upon the earth. 2:10 And a river went out of Eden to water the garden; and from there it was parted, and became into four heads. 17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. ACT 17:26 And has made of one blood all nations of men, to dwell on all the face of the earth, and has determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation. ROM 5:12 Which is why, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. 15 But not as the offense, so also is the free gift. For if through the offense of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, has abounded to many. 16 And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offenses to justification. 17 For if by one man's offense death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.) 18 Therefore as by the offense of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men to justification of life. 19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one will many be made righteous. 1CO

4. All actual transgressions proceed from this original corruption,<sup>131</sup> by which we are utterly disinclined, disabled, and made opposed to all that is good,<sup>132</sup> and completely inclined to all that is evil.<sup>133</sup>

5. During this life, this corruption of nature remains in those who are regenerated.<sup>134</sup> Even though it is pardoned and put to death through Christ, yet both this corruption of nature and all its expressions are truly and properly sin.<sup>135</sup>

6. Every sin, both original and actual, is a transgression of the righteous law of God and contrary to it.<sup>136</sup> Its nature brings guilt upon the sinner,<sup>137</sup> binding him over to the wrath of God,<sup>138</sup> and the curse of the law.<sup>139</sup> And so he becomes subject to death<sup>140</sup> with all its spiritual,<sup>141</sup> temporal,<sup>142</sup> and eternal miseries.<sup>143</sup>

---

15:21 For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead. 22 For just as in Adam all die, even so in Christ will all be made alive. 45 And so it is written, The first man Adam was made a living soul; the last Adam was made a quickening spirit. 49 And as we have borne the image of the earthy, we will also bear the image of the heavenly.

<sup>130</sup> PSA 51:5 Behold, I was shapen in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me. GEN 5:3 And Adam lived a hundred and thirty years, and fathered a son in his own likeness, after his image; and called his name Seth. JOB 14:4 Who can bring a clean thing out of an unclean? not one. 15:14 What is man, that he should be clean? and he which is born of a woman, that he should be righteous?

<sup>131</sup> JAM 1:14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. 15 Then when lust has conceived, it brings forth sin: and sin, when it is finished, brings forth death. EPH 2:2 In which in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience: 3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. MAT 15:19 For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies.

<sup>132</sup> ROM 5:6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly. ROM 8:7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, nor indeed can be. ROM 7:18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) dwells no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform what is good I do not find. COL 1:21 And you, that were at one time alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now he has reconciled.

<sup>133</sup> GEN 6:5 And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in the earth, and that every imagination of the thoughts of his heart was only evil continually. 8:21 And the Lord smelled a sweet savor; and the Lord said in his heart, I will not again curse the ground any more for man's sake; for the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth; nor will I again strike any more every thing living, as I have done. ROM 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one: 11 There is none that understands, there is none that seeks after God. 12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that does good, no, not one.

<sup>134</sup> IJO 1:8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us. 10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us. ROM 7:14 For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. 17 Now then it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwells in me. 18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwells no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform what is good I find not. 23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. JAM 3:2 For in many things we offend all. If any man offend not in word, the same is a perfect man, and able also to bridle the whole body. PRO 20:9 Who can say, I have made my heart clean, I am pure from my sin? ECC 7:20 For there is not a just man upon earth, that does good, and sins not.

<sup>135</sup> ROM 7:5 For when we were in the flesh, the motions of sins, which were by the law, did work in our members to produce fruit to death. 7 What will we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. No, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, You will not covet. 8 But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, worked in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin was dead. 25 I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin. GAL 5:17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would.

<sup>136</sup> IJO 3:4 Whoever commits sin transgresses also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.

<sup>137</sup> ROM 2:15 Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another. ROM 3:9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin. 19 Now we know that whatever the law says, it says to those who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.

<sup>138</sup> EPH 2:3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

<sup>139</sup> GAL 3:10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continues not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them.

<sup>140</sup> ROM 6:23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord.

<sup>141</sup> EPH 4:18 Having the understanding darkened, being alienated from the life of God through the ignorance that is in them, because of the blindness of their heart.

<sup>142</sup> ROM 8:20 For the creature was made subject to vanity, not willingly, but by reason of him who has subjected the same in hope. LAM 3:39 Why does a living man complain about the punishment of his sins?



---

## Chapter 7 - God's Covenant with Man

1. The distance between God and the creature is so great, that although rational creatures owe obedience to him as their Creator, they could never have any enjoyment of Him as their blessing and reward except by some voluntary condescension on God's part. He has been pleased to express this by way of covenant.<sup>144</sup>
2. The first covenant made with man was a covenant of works.<sup>145</sup> In it life was promised to Adam and through him to his posterity,<sup>146</sup> on condition of perfect and personal obedience.<sup>147</sup>
3. Since man, by his fall, made himself incapable of life by that covenant, the Lord was pleased to make a second covenant,<sup>148</sup> commonly called the covenant of grace. In it God freely offers sinners life and salvation by Jesus Christ. He requires them to have faith in Him so that they may be saved;<sup>149</sup> and he promises to give his Holy Spirit to all those who are ordained to eternal life, to make them willing and able to believe.<sup>150</sup>

---

<sup>143</sup> MAT 25:41 Then he will say also to them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels. 2TH 1:9 Who will be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power.

<sup>144</sup> ISA 40:13 Who has directed the Spirit of the Lord, or being his counsellor has taught him? 14 With whom did he take counsel, and who instructed him, and taught him in the path of judgment, and taught him knowledge, and showed to him the way of understanding? 15 Behold, the nations are as a drop of a bucket, and are counted as the small dust of the balance: behold, he takes up the isles as a very little thing. 16 And Lebanon is not sufficient to burn, nor the beasts of it sufficient for a burnt offering. 17 All nations before him are as nothing; and they are counted to him less than nothing, and vanity. JOB 9:32 For he is not a man, as I am, that I should answer him, and that we should come together in judgment. 33 Nor is there any umpire between us, that might lay his hand upon us both. ISA 2:25 If one man sins against another, the judge will judge him: but if a man sins against the Lord, who will entreat for him? Notwithstanding they did not listen to the voice of their father, because the Lord would slay them. PSA 113:5 Who is like the Lord our God, who dwells on high, 6 Who humbles himself to behold the things that are in heaven, and in the earth! PSA 100:2 Serve the Lord with gladness: come before his presence with singing. 3 Know that the Lord he is God: he is the one who has made us, and not we ourselves; we are his people, and the sheep of his pasture. JOB 22:2 Can a man be profitable to God, as one who is wise may be profitable to himself? 3 Is it any pleasure to the Almighty, that you are righteous? or is it gain to him that you make your ways perfect? JOB 35:7 If you are righteous, what do you give him? Or what does he receive from your hand? 8 Your wickedness may hurt a man as you are; and your righteousness may profit the son of man. LUK 17:10 So likewise you, when you will have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done what was our duty to do. ACT 17:24 God that made the world and all things in it; seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, He does not dwell in temples made with hands; 25 Nor is he worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed anything, seeing that he gives life to all, and breath, and all things.

<sup>145</sup> GAL 3:12 And the law is not of faith: but, The man that does them will live in them.

<sup>146</sup> ROM 10:5 For Moses describes the righteousness which is of the law: That the man which does those things will live by them. ROM 5:12 Which is why, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for all have sinned: 13 (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law. 14 Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over those who had not sinned in the same way as Adam's transgression, who is the figure of the one who was to come. 15 But the free gift is not like the offense. For if by the offense of one many are dead, much more the grace of God even the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, has overflowed to many. 16 And the gift is not like *the offense* by the one who sinned: for the judgment by one led to condemnation, but the free gift is for many offenses and leads to justification. 17 For if by one man's offense death reigned by one man; much more those who receive an abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life by one man, Jesus Christ.) 18 Therefore just as by the offense of one man, judgment came upon all men leading to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one man the free gift came upon all men leading to justification of life. 19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one many will be made righteous. 20 Moreover the law entered, that the offense might overflow. But where sin overflowed, grace much more so.

<sup>147</sup> GEN 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you must not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. GAL 3:10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that does not continue to do all things that are written in the book of the law.

<sup>148</sup> GAL 3:21 Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, truly righteousness should have been by the law. ROM 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh. ROM 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there no flesh will be justified in his sight: for by the law comes the knowledge of sin. 21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is evidenced, being witnessed to by the law and the prophets. GEN 3:15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; it will bruise your head, and you will bruise his heel. ISA 42:6 I the Lord have called you in righteousness, and will hold your hand, and will keep you, and give you for a covenant of the people, as a light for the Gentiles.

<sup>149</sup> MAR 16:15 And he said to them, Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. 16 One who believes and is baptized will be saved; but one who does not believe will be damned. JOH 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. ROM 10:6 But the righteousness which is of faith speaks in this way, Say not in your heart, Who will ascend into heaven? (that is, to bring Christ down from above;) 9 That if you will confess with your

4. This covenant of grace is frequently presented in scripture by the name of a testament (will), referring to the death of Jesus Christ, the Testator, and the bequeathal of the everlasting inheritance, with all that belongs to it.<sup>151</sup>

5. This covenant was administered differently in the time of the law than in the time of the Gospel.<sup>152</sup> Under the law, it was administered by promises, prophecies, sacrifices, circumcision, the Passover lamb, and other types and ordinances given to the Jewish people, all foreshadowing Christ who was to come.<sup>153</sup> Through the work of the Spirit, these were sufficient and efficacious for that time to instruct and build up the elect in their faith in the promised Messiah,<sup>154</sup> by whom they received complete forgiveness of sins and eternal salvation. This is called the Old Testament.<sup>155</sup>

6. Under the Gospel, when Christ physically appeared,<sup>156</sup> the ordinances by which this covenant is dispensed became the preaching of the Word and the administration of the sacraments of Baptism and the Lord's Supper.<sup>157</sup> Though fewer in number, and administered with more simplicity and less outward glory, yet in them the covenant is presented in greater fullness, clarity, and spiritual efficacy<sup>158</sup> to all nations, both Jews and Gentiles.<sup>159</sup> It is called the

---

mouth the Lord Jesus, and will believe in your heart that God has raised him from the dead, you will be saved. GAL 3:11 But that no man is justified by the law in the sight of God is evident: for, The just will live by faith.

<sup>150</sup> EZE 36:26 I will also give you a new heart, and I will put within you a new spirit: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you a heart of flesh. 27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and you will keep my judgments, and do them. JOH 6:44 No man can come to me unless the Father who has sent me draws him: and I will raise him up at the last day. 45 It is written in the prophets, And they will be all taught of God. Every man therefore that has heard, and has learned of the Father, comes to me.

<sup>151</sup> HEB 9:15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of an eternal inheritance. 16 For where a testament exists, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. 17 For a testament is in force after men are dead: otherwise it has no strength at all while the testator lives. HEB 7:22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament. LUK 22:20 Likewise he also took the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you. 1CO 11:25 In the same manner also he took the cup, when he had eaten, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: do this as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.

<sup>152</sup> 2CO 3:6 Who also has made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter kills, but the spirit gives life. 7 But if the ministration of death, written and engraven in stones, was glorious, so that the children of Israel could not steadfastly behold the face of Moses for the glory of his countenance; which glory was to be done away: 8 How will not the ministration of the spirit be rather glorious? 9 For if the ministration of condemnation is glory, much more does the ministration of righteousness exceed in glory.

<sup>153</sup> SEE HEB 8-10, ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith he had while he was still uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those who believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also. COL 2:11 In whom also you are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: 12 Buried with him in baptism, in which also you are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who has raised him from the dead. 1CO 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us.

<sup>154</sup> 1CO 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not have you be ignorant, how all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; 2 And were all baptized to Moses in the cloud and in the sea; 3 And all ate the same spiritual meat; 4 And all drank the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ. HEB 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises; but having seen them far off, they were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. JOH 8:56 Your father Abraham rejoiced to see my day: and he saw it, and was glad.

<sup>155</sup> GAL 3:7 Know therefore that those who are of faith, are the children of Abraham. 8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel to Abraham, saying, In you will all nations be blessed. 9 So then, those who are of faith are blessed along with faithful Abraham, 14 that the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

<sup>156</sup> COL 2:17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

<sup>157</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen. 1CO 11:23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: 24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: do this in remembrance of me. 25 In the same manner he also took the cup, when he had eaten, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: do this as often as you drink it, in remembrance of me.

<sup>158</sup> HEB 12:22 But you have come to mount Zion, and to the city of the living God, the heavenly Jerusalem, and to an innumerable company of angels, 23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect, 24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaks better things than that of Abel. 25 See that you do not refuse him who speaks. For if those did not escape who refused the one who spoke on earth, much more will we not escape, if we turn away from the one who speaks from heaven: 26 Whose voice then shook the earth:

New Testament.<sup>160</sup> These are not two covenants of grace which differ in substance. They are one and the same, under various dispensations.<sup>161</sup>

---

## Chapter 8 - Christ the Mediator

1. It pleased God, in His eternal purpose, to choose and ordain the Lord Jesus, His only begotten Son, to be the Mediator between God and man.<sup>162</sup> He is the Prophet,<sup>163</sup> Priest,<sup>164</sup> and King,<sup>165</sup> the Head and Savior of His Church,<sup>166</sup> the Heir of all things,<sup>167</sup> and Judge of the world.<sup>168</sup> From all eternity, God gave a people to him to be His seed,<sup>169</sup> and to be redeemed, called, justified, sanctified, and glorified in time by him.<sup>170</sup>

---

but now he has promised, saying, Yet once more I do not shake the earth only, but also heaven. 27 And this word, Yet once more, signifies the removing of those things that are shaken, like things that are made, so that those things which cannot be shaken may remain. JER 31:33 But this will be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, says the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and I will be their God, and they will be my people. 34 And no more will every man teach his neighbor, and every man his brother, saying, Know the Lord: for they will all know me, from the least of them to the greatest of them, says the Lord; for I will forgive their iniquity, and I will remember their sin no more.

<sup>159</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. EPH 2:15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; in order to make in himself one new man from two, thus making peace; 16 And that he might reconcile both to God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby: 17 And he came and preached peace to you who were far off, and to those who were near. 18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit to the Father. 19 Now therefore you are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God.

<sup>160</sup> LUK 22:20 Likewise he took the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

<sup>161</sup> GAL 3:14 That the blessing of Abraham might come upon the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith. 16 Now the promises were made to Abraham and his seed. He does not say, And to seeds, as of many; but as of one, And to your seed, which is Christ. ACT 15:11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we will be saved, even as they were. ROM 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is evidenced, being witnessed by the law and the prophets; 22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith in Jesus Christ to all and upon all those who believe: for there is no difference: 23 For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God. 30 Seeing it is one God, who will justify the circumcision out of faith, and the uncircumcision through faith. PSA 32:1 Blessed is he whose transgression is forgiven, whose sin is covered. ROM 4:3 For what does the scripture say? Abraham believed God, and it was counted to him for righteousness. 6 Even as David also describes the blessedness of the man to whom God imputes righteousness without works. 16 Therefore it is of faith, that it might be by grace; to the end that the promise might be ensured to all the seed; not just to that which is of the law, but to that also which is of the faith of Abraham; who is the father of us all, 17 (As it is written, I have made you a father of many nations,) before him whom he believed, even God, who regenerates the dead, and calls those things which are not as though they were. 23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; 24 But for us also, to whom it will be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead. HEB 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever.

<sup>162</sup> ISA 42:1 Behold my servant, whom I uphold; my elect, in whom my soul delights; I have put my spirit upon him: he will bring judgment to the Gentiles. IPE 1:19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: 20 Who truly was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you. JOH 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whoever believes in him should not perish, but have everlasting life. ITI 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.

<sup>163</sup> ACT 3:22 For Moses truly said to the fathers, A prophet will the Lord your God raise up to you of your brethren, like to me; him will you hear in all things whatever he will say to you.

<sup>164</sup> HEB 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made a high priest; but the one who said to him, You are my Son, today have I begotten you. 6 As he says also in another place, You are a priest forever after the order of Melchisedec.

<sup>165</sup> PSA 2:6 Yet have I set my king upon my holy hill of Zion. LUK 1:33 And he will reign over the house of Jacob forever; and of his kingdom there will be no end.

<sup>166</sup> EPH 5:23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the savior of the body.

<sup>167</sup> HEB 1:2 Has in these last days spoken to us by his Son, whom he has appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds.

<sup>168</sup> ACT 17:31 Because he has appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he has ordained; whereof he has given assurance to all men, in that he has raised him from the dead.

<sup>169</sup> JOH 17:6 I have manifested your name to the men which you gave me out of the world: yours they were, and you gave them me; and they have kept your word. PSA 22:30 A seed will serve him; it will be accounted to the Lord for a generation. ISA 53:10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he has put him to grief: when you will make his soul an offering for sin, he will see his seed, he will prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord will prosper in his hand.

<sup>170</sup> ITI 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. ISA 55:4 Behold, I have given him for a witness to the people, a leader and commander to the people. 5 Behold, you will call a nation that you know not, and nations that knew not you will run to you

2. When the fullness of time had come, the Son of God, the second person of the Trinity, being truly and eternally God, of one substance and equal with the Father, took upon himself man's nature,<sup>171</sup> with all its essential properties and common frailties. Yet he was without sin.<sup>172</sup> He was conceived by the power of the Holy Spirit in the womb of the virgin Mary, of her substance.<sup>173</sup> Two whole, perfect, and distinct natures, the divine and the human, were inseparably joined together in one person without being converted, mixed, or confused.<sup>174</sup> This person is truly God and truly man, but one Christ, the only Mediator between God and man.<sup>175</sup>

3. In His human nature, thus united to the divine nature, the Lord Jesus was sanctified and anointed with the Holy Spirit without measure,<sup>176</sup> having in Him all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.<sup>177</sup> The Father was pleased to have all fullness dwell in him,<sup>178</sup> so that being holy, blameless, and undefiled, full of grace and truth,<sup>179</sup> he might be thoroughly equipped to execute the office of a Mediator and Surety.<sup>180</sup> He did not take this office for himself, but was called to it by His Father,<sup>181</sup> who put all power and judgment into His hand and commanded him to execute the same.<sup>182</sup>

---

because of the Lord your God, and for the Holy One of Israel; for he has glorified you. 1CO 1:30 But of him are you in Christ Jesus, who of God is made to us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption.

<sup>171</sup> JOH 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God. 14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth. 1JO 5:20 And we know that the Son of God has come, and has given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life. PHI 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God. GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law.

<sup>172</sup> HEB 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil. 16 For truly he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham. 17 Which is why in all things it behooved him to be made like to his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people. 4:15 For we have not a high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

<sup>173</sup> LUK 1:27 To a virgin espoused to a man whose name was Joseph, of the house of David; and the virgin's name was Mary. 31 And, behold, you will conceive in your womb, and bear a son, and will call his name Jesus. 35 And the angel answered and said to her, The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Highest will overshadow you: therefore also that holy thing which will be born of you will be called the Son of God. GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law.

<sup>174</sup> LUK 1:35 And the angel answered and said to her, The Holy Spirit will come upon you, and the power of the Highest will overshadow you: therefore also that holy thing which will be born of you will be called the Son of God. COL 2:9 For in him dwells all the fullness of the Godhead bodily. ROM 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and from whom Christ came as concerns the flesh, who is over all, God blessed forever. Amen. 1PE 3:18 For Christ also has once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit. 1TI 3:16 And without controversy great is the mystery of godliness: God was manifest in the flesh, justified in the Spirit, seen of angels, preached to the Gentiles, believed on in the world, received up into glory.

<sup>175</sup> ROM 1:3 Concerning his Son Jesus Christ our Lord, which was made of the seed of David according to the flesh. ROM 1:4 And declared to be the Son of God with power, according to the spirit of holiness, by the resurrection from the dead. 1TI 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus.

<sup>176</sup> PSA 45:7 You love righteousness, and hate wickedness: therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above your fellows. JOH 3:34 For he whom God has sent speaks the words of God: for God gives not the Spirit by measure to him.

<sup>177</sup> COL 2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

<sup>178</sup> COL 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fullness dwell.

<sup>179</sup> HEB 7:26 For such a high priest became us, who is holy, harmless, undefiled, separate from sinners, and made higher than the heavens. JOH 1:14 And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.

<sup>180</sup> ACT 10:38 How God anointed Jesus of Nazareth with the Holy Spirit and with power: who went about doing good, and healing all who were oppressed of the devil; for God was with him. HEB 12:24 And to Jesus the mediator of the new covenant, and to the blood of sprinkling, that speaks better things than that of Abel. HEB 7:22 By so much was Jesus made a surety of a better testament.

<sup>181</sup> HEB 5:4 And no man takes this honor to himself, but the one who is called of God, as was Aaron. 5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made a high priest; but the one who said to him, You are my Son, today have I begotten you.

<sup>182</sup> JOH 5:22 For the Father judges no man, but has committed all judgment to the Son. 27 And has given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man. MAT 28:18 And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All power is given to me in heaven and in earth. ACT 2:36 Therefore let all the house of Israel know assuredly, that God has made that same Jesus, whom you have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

4. The Lord Jesus most willingly undertook this office.<sup>183</sup> So that He might discharge its obligations, he was born under the law<sup>184</sup> and perfectly fulfilled it.<sup>185</sup> He endured the most grievous torments in His soul,<sup>186</sup> and the most painful sufferings in His body.<sup>187</sup> He was crucified; he died,<sup>188</sup> and he was buried. He remained under the power of death, but did not decay.<sup>189</sup> On the third day he arose from the dead<sup>190</sup> with the same body in which He suffered.<sup>191</sup> In this body he ascended into heaven, where he sits at the right hand of His Father,<sup>192</sup> making intercession.<sup>193</sup> He shall return, to judge men and angels at the end of the world.<sup>194</sup>

5. The Lord Jesus has fully satisfied the justice of His Father by His perfect obedience and sacrifice of Himself, which through the eternal Spirit he offered up once to God.<sup>195</sup> He purchased not only reconciliation, but an everlasting inheritance in the kingdom of heaven for those whom the Father has given to Him.<sup>196</sup>

---

<sup>183</sup> PSA 40:7 Then said I, behold, I come: in the volume of the book it is written of me, 8 I delight to do your will, O my God: yes, your law is within my heart. HEB 10:5 Which is why when he comes into the world, he says, Sacrifice and offering you would not, but a body have you prepared me: 6 In burnt offerings and sacrifices for sin you hast had no pleasure. 7 Then said I, behold, I come(in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do your will, O God. 8 Above when he said, Sacrifice and offering and burnt offerings and offering for sin you would not, nor had pleasure in it; which are offered by the law; 9 Then said he, behold, I come to do your will, O God. He takes away the first, that he may establish the second. 10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. JOH 10:18 No man takes it from me, but I lay it down of myself. I have power to lay it down, and I have power to take it again. This commandment have I received of my Father. PHI 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient to death, even the death of the cross.

<sup>184</sup> GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law.

<sup>185</sup> MAT 3:15 And Jesus answering said to him, Suffer it to be so now: for thus it becomes us to fulfill all righteousness. Then he suffered him. 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill.

<sup>186</sup> MAT 26:37 And he took with him Peter and the two sons of Zebedee, and began to be sorrowful and very heavy. 38 Then he says to them, My soul is exceeding sorrowful, even to death: wait you here, and watch with me. LUK 22:44 And being in an agony he prayed more earnestly: and his sweat was as it were great drops of blood falling down to the ground. MAT 27:46 And about the ninth hour Jesus cried with a loud voice, saying, Eli, Eli, lama sabachthani? that is to say, My God, my God, why have you forsaken me?

<sup>187</sup> SEE MAT 26-27

<sup>188</sup> PHI 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient to death, even the death of the cross.

<sup>189</sup> ACT 2:23 Being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, you have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain him: 24 Whom God has raised up, having loosed the pains of death: because it was not possible that he should be holden of it. 27 Because you will not leave my soul in hell, nor will you suffer your Holy One to see corruption. 13:37 But he, whom God raised again, saw no corruption. ROM 6:9 Knowing that Christ being raised from the dead dies no more; death has no more dominion over him.

<sup>190</sup> ICO 15:3 For I delivered to you first of all what I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures; 4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures: 5 And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve.

<sup>191</sup> JOH 20:25 The other disciples therefore said to him, We have seen the Lord. But he said to them, Except I will see in his hands the print of the nails, and put my finger into the print of the nails, and thrust my hand into his side, I will not believe. 27 Then he says to Thomas, reach hither your finger, and behold my hands; and reach hither your hand, and thrust it into my side: and do not be faithless, but believing.

<sup>192</sup> MAR 16:19 So then after the Lord had spoken to them, he was received up into heaven, and sat at the right hand of God.

<sup>193</sup> ROM 8:34 Who is the one who condemns? It is Christ that died, yes rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also makes intercession for us. HEB 9:24 For Christ is not entered into the holy places made with hands, which are the figures of the true; but into heaven itself, now to appear in the presence of God for us. 25 Which is why he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come to God by him, seeing he ever lives to make intercession for them.

<sup>194</sup> ROM 14:9 For to this end Christ both died, and rose, and revived, that he might be Lord both of the dead and living. 10 But why do you judge your brother? or why do you despise your brother? for we will all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. ACT 1:11 Which also said, you men of Galilee, why stand you gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, will so come in like manner as you have seen him go into heaven. 10:42 And he commanded us to preach to the people, and to testify that it is he which was ordained of God to be the Judge of quick and dead. MAT 13:40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so will it be at the end of this world. 41 The Son of man will send forth his angels, and they will gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and those who do iniquity; 42 And will cast them into a furnace of fire: there will be wailing and gnashing of teeth. JUD 6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness to the judgment of the great day. 2PE 2:4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved to judgment.

<sup>195</sup> ROM 5:19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one will many be made righteous. HEB 9:14 How much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? 16 For where a testament is, there must also of necessity be the death of the testator. 10:14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are sanctified. EPH 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also has loved us, and has given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savor. ROM 3:25 Whom God has set forth to be a

6. Although the work of redemption was not actually accomplished by Christ until after His incarnation, yet its power, efficacy, and benefits were applied to the elect in all ages successively from the beginning of the world. This was done in and by those promises, types, and sacrifices by which Christ was revealed and signified to be the seed of the woman that would bruise the serpent's head. He was the Lamb slain from the beginning of the world. He is the same yesterday, today, and forever.<sup>197</sup>

7. In the work of mediation, Christ acts according to both natures, doing by each nature what is proper to itself.<sup>198</sup> Yet, by reason of the unity of his person, what is proper to one nature is in Scripture sometimes attributed to the person called by the other nature.<sup>199</sup>

8. To all those for whom Christ purchased redemption, He certainly and effectually applies and communicates it.<sup>200</sup> He makes intercession for them<sup>201</sup> and reveals to them, in and by the Word, the mysteries of salvation.<sup>202</sup> He effectually persuades them by His Spirit to believe and obey, governing their hearts by His word and Spirit,<sup>203</sup> and

---

propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God; 26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believes in Jesus.

<sup>196</sup> DAN 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon your people and upon your holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. 26 And after threescore and two weeks will Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that will come will destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end of it will be with a flood, and to the end of the war desolations are determined. COL 1:19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fullness dwell; 20 And, having made peace through the blood of his cross, by him to reconcile all things to himself; by him, I say, whether they be things in earth, or things in heaven. EPH 1:11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will. 14 Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, to the praise of his glory. JOH 17:2 As you have given him power over all flesh, that he should give eternal life to as many as you have given him. HEB 9:12 Nor by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. 15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance.

<sup>197</sup> GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, 5 To redeem those who were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. GEN 3:15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; it will bruise your head, and you will bruise his heel. REV 13:8 And all who dwell upon the earth will worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

HEB 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever.

<sup>198</sup> HEB 9:14 How much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? IPE 3:18 For Christ also has once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit.

<sup>199</sup> ACT 20:28 Take heed therefore to yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Spirit has made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he has purchased with his own blood. JOH 3:13 And no man has ascended up to heaven, but the one who came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven. IJO 3:16 Hereby perceive we the love of God, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren.

<sup>200</sup> JOH 6:37 All who the Father gives me will come to me; and him that comes to me I will in no wise cast out. 39 And this is the Father's will which has sent me, that of all which he has given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day. 10:15 As the Father knows me, even so know I the Father: and I lay down my life for the sheep. 16 And other sheep I have, which are not of this fold: them also I must bring, and they will hear my voice; and there will be one fold, and one shepherd.

<sup>201</sup> IJO 2:1 My little children, these things write I to you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: 2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world. ROM 8:34 Who is the one who condemns? It is Christ that died, yes rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also makes intercession for us.

<sup>202</sup> JOH 15:13 Greater love has no man than this, that a man lay down his life for his friends. 15 Henceforth I call you not servants; for the servant knows not what his lord does: but I have called you friends; for all things that I have heard of my Father I have made known to you. EPH 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace; 8 In which he has abounded toward us in all wisdom and prudence; 9 Having made known to us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he has purposed in himself. JOH 17:6 I have manifested your name to the men which you gave me out of the world: yours they were, and you gave them me; and they have kept your word.

<sup>203</sup> JOH 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he will give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever. HEB 12:2 Looking to Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

2CO 4:13 We having the same spirit of faith, just as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak. ROM 8:9 But you are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his. 14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. 15:18 For I will not dare to speak of any of those things which Christ has not worked by me, to make the Gentiles obedient, by word and deed, 19 Through mighty

overcoming all their enemies by his almighty power and wisdom. He does this using ways and means that harmonize with his wonderful and unsearchable dispensation.<sup>204</sup>

---

## Chapter 9 - Of Free Will

1. God has endowed the will of man with such natural liberty that is neither forced nor set toward good or evil by any absolute necessity of nature.<sup>205</sup>

2. Man, in his state of innocence, had freedom and power to will and to do what was good and well-pleasing to God;<sup>206</sup> but this was flexible, so that he might fall from it.<sup>207</sup>

3. By his fall into a state of sin, man has wholly lost all ability to will any spiritual good leading to salvation.<sup>208</sup> So, a natural man, being altogether opposed to that good,<sup>209</sup> and dead in sin,<sup>210</sup> is unable by his own strength to convert himself, or to prepare himself to be converted.<sup>211</sup>

4. When God converts a sinner and brings him into the state of grace, he frees him from his natural bondage under sin.<sup>212</sup> By His grace alone he enables him to freely will and to do what is spiritually good.<sup>213</sup> Yet, because of his remaining corruption, he does not perfectly nor only will what is good; he also wills what is evil.<sup>214</sup>

---

signs and wonders, by the power of the Spirit of God; so that from Jerusalem, and round about to Illyricum, I have fully preached the gospel of Christ. JOH 17:17 Sanctify them through your truth: your word is truth.

<sup>204</sup> PSA 110:1 The Lord said to my Lord, Sit you at my right hand, until I make your enemies your footstool. 1CO 15:25 For he must reign, till he has put all enemies under his feet. 26 The last enemy that will be destroyed is death. MAL 4:2 But to you that fear my name will the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and you will go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall. 3 And you will tread down the wicked; for they will be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I will do this, says the Lord of hosts. COL 2:15 And having spoiled principalities and powers, he made a show of them openly, triumphing over them in it.

<sup>205</sup> MAT 17:12 But I say to you, That Elias has come already, and they did not know him, but have done to him whatever they wanted. Likewise, the Son of man will also suffer by them.. JAM 1:14 But every man is tempted, when he is drawn away of his own lust, and enticed. DEU 30:19 I call heaven and earth to record this day against you, that I have set before you life and death, blessing and cursing; therefore choose life, that both you and your seed may live.

<sup>206</sup> ECC 7:29 behold, only this have I found, that God has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions. GEN 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth.

<sup>207</sup> GEN 2:16 And the Lord God commanded the man, saying, Of every tree of the garden you may freely eat: 17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of its fruit, and ate, and gave also to her husband with her; and he ate.

<sup>208</sup> ROM 5:6 For when we were yet without strength, in due time Christ died for the ungodly. 8:7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, nor indeed can be. JOH 15:5 I am the vine, you are the branches: One who abides in me, and I in him, the same brings forth much fruit: for without me you can do nothing.

<sup>209</sup> ROM 3:10 As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one. 12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that does good, no, not one.

<sup>210</sup> EPH 2:1 And you he has quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins. 5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved). COL 2:13 And you, being dead in your sins and the uncircumcision of your flesh, he has quickened together with him, having forgiven you all trespasses.

<sup>211</sup> JOH 6:44 No man can come to me, except the Father which has sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. 65 And he said, Therefore I said to you, that no man can come to me, unless it were given to him of my Father. EPH 2:2 In which in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience: 3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. 4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, 5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved;). 1CO 2:14 But the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness to him: nor can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. TIT 3:3 For we ourselves also were sometimes foolish, disobedient, deceived, serving diverse lusts and pleasures, living in malice and envy, hateful, and hating one another. 4 But after that the kindness and love of God our Savior toward man appeared, 5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>212</sup> COL 1:13 Who has delivered us from the power of darkness, and has translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son. JOH 8:34 Jesus answered them, Truly, truly, I say to you, Whoever commits sin is the servant of sin. 36 If the Son therefore will make you free, you will be free indeed.

5. The will of man is made perfectly and unchangeably free to do good alone, only in the state of glory.<sup>215</sup>

---

## Chapter 10 - Effectual Calling

1. All those whom God has predestined to life, and only those, he is pleased to effectually call in his appointed and accepted time,<sup>216</sup> by His Word and Spirit.<sup>217</sup> He calls them out of their state of sin and death, which they are in by nature, to grace and salvation by Jesus Christ.<sup>218</sup> God enlightens their minds spiritually and savingly to understand the things of God.<sup>219</sup> He takes away their hearts of stone and gives them hearts of flesh.<sup>220</sup> He renews their wills. And by His almighty power, he turns them to what is good,<sup>221</sup> effectually drawing them to Jesus Christ.<sup>222</sup> Yet they come most freely, being made willing by His grace.<sup>223</sup>

---

<sup>213</sup> PHI 2:13 For it is God which works in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure. ROM 6:18 Being then made free from sin, you became the servants of righteousness. 22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end everlasting life.

<sup>214</sup> GAL 5:17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would. ROM 7:15 For what I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. 18 For I know that in me(that is, in my flesh,) dwells no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform what is good I find not. 19 For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do. 21 I find then a law, that, when I would do good, evil is present with me. 23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.

<sup>215</sup> EPH 4:13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to a perfect man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ. HEB 12:23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect. 1JO 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it does not yet appear what we will be: but we know that, when he will appear, we will be like him; for we will see him as he is. JUD 24 Now to him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy.

<sup>216</sup> ROM 8:30 Moreover those whom he predestined, he also called: and those whom he called, he also justified: and those whom he justified, he also glorified. 11:7 What then? Israel has not obtained what he seeks for; but the election has obtained it, and the rest were blinded. EPH 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him: 11 In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestined according to the purpose of the One who works all things after the counsel of his own will.

<sup>217</sup> 2TH 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God has from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth: 14 To which he called you by our gospel, to the obtaining of the glory of our Lord Jesus Christ. 2CO 3:3 Forasmuch as you are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshy tables of the heart. 6 Who also has made us able ministers of the new testament; not of the letter, but of the spirit: for the letter kills, but the spirit gives life.

<sup>218</sup> ROM 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus has made me free from the law of sin and death. EPH 2:1 And you he has quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins; 2 In which in time past you walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of disobedience: 3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others. 4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, 5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved). 2TI 1:9 Who has saved us, and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began, 10 But is now made manifest by the appearing of our Savior Jesus Christ, who has abolished death, and has brought life and immortality to light through the gospel.

<sup>219</sup> ACT 26:18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among those who are sanctified by faith that is in me. 1CO 2:10 But God has revealed them to us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searches all things, yes, the deep things of God. 12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. EPH 1:17 That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: 18 The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that you may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints.

<sup>220</sup> EZE 36:26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you a heart of flesh.

<sup>221</sup> EZE 11:19 And I will give them one heart, and I will put a new spirit within you; and I will take the stony heart out of their flesh, and will give them a heart of flesh. PHI 2:13 For it is God which works in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure. DEU 30:6 And the Lord your God will circumcise your heart, and the heart of your seed, to love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, that you may live. EZE 36:27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and you will keep my judgments, and do them.



2. This effectual call is from God's free and special grace alone, and not from anything at all foreseen in man.<sup>224</sup> Man is entirely passive in this until, being made alive and renewed by the Holy Spirit,<sup>225</sup> he is enabled to answer this call, and embrace the grace offered and conveyed in it.<sup>226</sup>

3. Elect infants who die in infancy are regenerated and saved by Christ through the Spirit<sup>227</sup> who works when, where, and how he pleases:<sup>228</sup> So also are all other elect persons who are incapable of being outwardly called by the ministry of the Word.<sup>229</sup>

4. Although other persons who are not elected may be called by the ministry of the Word,<sup>230</sup> and may experience some common activities of the Spirit,<sup>231</sup> they never truly come to Christ. Therefore they cannot be saved.<sup>232</sup> Much less can men not professing to be Christians be saved in any other way, no matter how diligent they are to order their

---

<sup>222</sup> EPH 1:19 And what is the exceeding greatness of his power toward us who believe, according to the working of his mighty power. JOH 6:44 No man can come to me, except the Father which has sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day. 45 It is written in the prophets, And they will be all taught of God. Every man therefore that has heard, and has learned of the Father, comes to me.

<sup>223</sup> SON 1:4 Draw me, we will run after you. PSA 110:3 your people will be willing in the day of your power, in the beauties of holiness from the womb of the morning: you have the dew of your youth. JOH 6:37 All who the Father gives me will come to me; and him that comes to me I will in no wise cast out. ROM 6:16 Know you not, that to whom you yield yourselves servants to obey, his servants you are to whom you obey; whether of sin to death, or of obedience to righteousness? 17 But God be thanked, that you were the servants of sin, but you have obeyed from the heart that form of doctrine which was delivered you. 18 Being then made free from sin, you became the servants of righteousness.

<sup>224</sup> 2TI 1:9 Who has saved us, and called us with a holy calling, not according to our works, but according to his own purpose and grace, which was given us in Christ Jesus before the world began. TIT 3:4 But after that the kindness and love of God our Savior toward man appeared, 5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit. EPH 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us, 5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved). 8 For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: 9 Not of works, lest any man should boast. ROM 9:11 For the children not yet being born, nor having done any good or evil, that the purpose of God according to election might stand, not of works, but of him that calls.

<sup>225</sup> 1CO 2:14 But the natural man does not receive the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness to him: nor can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned. ROM 8:7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, nor indeed can be. EPH 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved).

<sup>226</sup> JOH 6:37 All who the Father gives me will come to me; and him that comes to me I will in no wise cast out. EZE 36:37 Thus says the Lord God; I will yet for this be inquired of by the house of Israel, to do it for them; I will increase them with men like a flock. JOH 5:25 Truly, truly, I say to you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead will hear the voice of the Son of God: and those who hear will live.

<sup>227</sup> LUK 18:15 And they brought to him also infants, that he would touch them: but when his disciples saw it, they rebuked them. 16 But Jesus called them to himself, and said, Suffer little children to come to me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of God. ACT 2:38 Then Peter said to them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39 For the promise is to you, and to your children, and to all who are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God will call. JOH 3:3 Jesus answered and said to him, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God. 5 Jesus answered, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. 1JO 5:12 One who has the Son has life; and one who does not have the Son of God does not have life. ROM 8:9 But you are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

<sup>228</sup> JOH 3:8 The wind blows where it will, and you hear the sound of it, but can not tell from where it comes, and whither it goes: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.

<sup>229</sup> 1JO 5:12 One who has the Son has life; and one who does not have the Son of God does not have life. ACT 4:12 Nor is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

<sup>230</sup> MAT 22:14 For many are called, but few are chosen.

<sup>231</sup> MAT 7:22 Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in your name? and in your name have cast out devils? and in your name done many wonderful works? 13:20 But the one who received the seed into stony places, the same is the one who hears the word, and anon with joy receives it; 21 Yet he has no root in himself, but lasts for a while: for when tribulation or persecution arises because of the word, by and by he is offended. HEB 6:4 For it is impossible for those who were once enlightened, and have tasted of the heavenly gift, and were made partakers of the Holy Spirit, 5 And have tasted the good word of God, and the powers of the world to come.

<sup>232</sup> JOH 6:64 But there are some of you who do not believe. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that did not believe, and who should betray him. 65 And he said, Therefore I said to you, that no man can come to me, unless it were given to him of my Father. 66 From that time many of his disciples went back, and walked no more with him. 8:24 I said therefore to you, that you will die in your sins: for if you believe not that I am he, you will die in your sins.

lives by the light of nature and the laws of whatever religion they profess.<sup>233</sup> To assert and maintain that they may be saved in some other way is very pernicious, and it is to be detested.<sup>234</sup>

---

## Chapter 11 - Justification

1. Those whom God effectually calls, He also freely justifies,<sup>235</sup> not by infusing righteousness into them, but by pardoning their sins and by considering and accepting them as righteous. They are justified not for anything fashioned in them, or done by them, but for Christ's sake alone. It is not by imputing to them faith itself, or the act of believing, or any other act of personal obedience<sup>236</sup> as their righteousness. It is by imputing the obedience and satisfaction of Christ to them.<sup>237</sup> They receive and rest on Him and His righteousness by faith. Men do not have this faith of themselves; it is the gift of God.<sup>238</sup>

2. Faith, thus receiving and resting on Christ and His righteousness, is the only instrument of justification.<sup>239</sup> Yet it is not the only grace in the person justified. It is always accompanied by all other saving graces. Justifying faith is not dead, but works by love.<sup>240</sup>

---

<sup>233</sup> ACT 4:12 Nor is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved. JOH 14:6 Jesus says to him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man comes to the Father, but by me. EPH 2:12 That at that time you were without Christ, being aliens from the commonwealth of Israel, and strangers from the covenants of promise, having no hope, and without God in the world. JOH 4:22 you worship you know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews. 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know you the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent.

<sup>234</sup> 2JO 1:9 Whoever transgresses, and abides not in the doctrine of Christ, does not have God. The one who abides in the doctrine of Christ, he has both the Father and the Son. 10 If there come any to you, and do not bring this doctrine, receive him not into your house, nor bid him God speed: 11 For the one who bid him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds. 1CO 16:22 If any man love not the Lord Jesus Christ, let him be Anathema Maranatha. GAL 1:6 I marvel that you are so soon removed from him that called you into the grace of Christ to another gospel: 7 Which is not another; but there be some that trouble you, and would pervert the gospel of Christ. 8 But though we, or an angel from heaven, preach any other gospel to you than what we have preached to you, let him be accursed.

<sup>235</sup> ROM 8:30 Moreover those whom he predestined, he also called: and those whom he called, he also justified: and those whom he justified, he also glorified. ROM 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus.

<sup>236</sup> Originally, "evangelical obedience."

<sup>237</sup> ROM 4:5 But to him that works not, but believes on him that justifies the ungodly, his faith is counted for righteousness. 6 Even as David also describes the blessedness of the man, to whom God imputes righteousness without works, 7 Saying, Blessed are they whose iniquities are forgiven, and whose sins are covered. 8 Blessed is the man to whom the Lord will not impute sin. 2CO 5:19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world to himself, not imputing their trespasses to them; and has committed to us the word of reconciliation. 21 For he has made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him. ROM 3:22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ to all and upon all those that believe: for there is no difference. 24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus. 25 Whom God has set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God. 27 Where is boasting then? It is excluded. By what law? of works? No: but by the law of faith. 28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit. 7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life. EPH 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace. JER 23:6 In his days Judah will be saved, and Israel will dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he will be called, The Lord Our Righteousness. 1CO 1:30 But of him are you in Christ Jesus, who of God is made to us wisdom, and righteousness, and sanctification, and redemption: 31 That, just as it is written, One who glories, let him glory in the Lord. ROM 5:17 For if by one man's offense death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness will reign in life by one, Jesus Christ. 18 Therefore as by the offense of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men to justification of life. 19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one will many be made righteous.

<sup>238</sup> ACT 10:44 While Peter yet spoke these words, the Holy Spirit fell on all those who heard the word. GAL 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law will no flesh be justified. PHI 3:9 And be found in him, not having my own righteousness, which is of the law, but what is through the faith of Christ, the righteousness which is of God by faith: ACT 13:38 Be it known to you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached to you the forgiveness of sins: 39 And by him all who believe are justified from all things, from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. EPH 2:7 That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus. 8 For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God.

<sup>239</sup> JOH 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to those who believe on his name: ROM 3:28 Therefore we conclude that a man is justified by faith without the deeds of the law. ROM 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ.

3. Christ, by His obedience and death, fully discharged the debt of all those who are thus justified. He made a proper, real, and full satisfaction of His Father's justice in their behalf.<sup>241</sup> Yet, because the Father freely gave him for them,<sup>242</sup> and Christ's obedience and satisfaction were freely accepted in their stead<sup>243</sup> (not because of anything in them), their justification is only of free grace.<sup>244</sup> This is so that both the exact justice and rich grace of God might be glorified in the justification of sinners.<sup>245</sup>

4. From all eternity, God decreed to justify all the elect.<sup>246</sup> In the fullness of time, Christ died for their sins and rose again for their justification.<sup>247</sup> Nevertheless, they are not justified until the Holy Spirit, in due time, actually applies Christ to them.<sup>248</sup>

5. God continues to forgive the sins of those who are justified.<sup>249</sup> Although they can never fall from the state of justification,<sup>250</sup> they may fall under God's fatherly displeasure by their sins, and not have the light of His

---

<sup>240</sup> JAM 2:17 Even so faith, if it does not have works, is dead, being alone. 22 Do you see how faith worked with his works, and by works was faith made perfect? 26 For just as the body without the spirit is dead, so faith without works is dead also. GAL 5:6 For in Jesus Christ neither circumcision avails anything, nor uncircumcision; but faith which works by love.

<sup>241</sup> ROM 5:8 But God commends his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us. 9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we will be saved from wrath through him. 10 For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we will be saved by his life. 19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one will many be made righteous. 1TI 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus; 6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. HEB 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. 14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are sanctified. DAN 9:24 Seventy weeks are determined upon your people and upon your holy city, to finish the transgression, and to make an end of sins, and to make reconciliation for iniquity, and to bring in everlasting righteousness, and to seal up the vision and prophecy, and to anoint the most Holy. 26 And after threescore and two weeks will Messiah be cut off, but not for himself: and the people of the prince that will come will destroy the city and the sanctuary; and the end of it will be with a flood, and to the end of the war desolations are determined. ISA 53:4 Surely he has borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, struck of God, and afflicted. 5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed. 6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the Lord has laid on him the iniquity of us all. 10 Yet it pleased the Lord to bruise him; he has put him to grief: when you will make his soul an offering for sin, he will see his seed, he will prolong his days, and the pleasure of the Lord will prosper in his hand. 11 He will see of the travail of his soul, and will be satisfied: by his knowledge will my righteous servant justify many; for he will bear their iniquities. 12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he will divide the spoil with the strong; because he has poured out his soul to death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bore the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

<sup>242</sup> ROM 8:32 The one who spared not his own Son, but delivered him up for us all, how will he not with him also freely give us all things?

<sup>243</sup> 2CO 5:21 For he has made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him. MAT 3:17 And behold a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased. EPH 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also has loved us, and has given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweet smelling savor.

<sup>244</sup> ROM 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus: EPH 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.

<sup>245</sup> ROM 3:26 To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believes in Jesus. EPH 2:7 That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

<sup>246</sup> GAL 3:8 And the scripture, foreseeing that God would justify the heathen through faith, preached before the gospel to Abraham, saying, In you will all nations be blessed. 1PE 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, to obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace to you, and peace, be multiplied. 19 But with the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot: 20 Who truly was foreordained before the foundation of the world, but was manifest in these last times for you, ROM 8:30 Moreover those whom he predestined, he also called: and those whom he called, he also justified: and those whom he justified, he also glorified.

<sup>247</sup> GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law. 1TI 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time. ROM 4:25 Who was delivered for our offenses, and was raised again for our justification.

<sup>248</sup> COL 1:21 And you, that were sometime alienated and enemies in your mind by wicked works, yet now he has reconciled 22 In the body of his flesh through death, to present you holy and unblameable and unproveable in his sight. GAL 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law will no flesh be justified. TIT 3:4 But after that the kindness and love of God our Savior toward man appeared, 5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit; 6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior; 7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

<sup>249</sup> MAT 6:12 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. 1JO 1:7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanses us from all sin. 9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just

countenance restored to them until they humble themselves, confess their sins, plead for pardon, and renew their faith and repentance.<sup>251</sup>

6. The justification of believers under the Old Testament was, in all these respects, one and the same with the justification of believers under the New Testament.<sup>252</sup>

---

## Chapter 12 - Of Adoption

God guarantees, in and for his only son Jesus Christ, to make all those who are justified, partakers of the grace of adoption.<sup>253</sup> By this act they become God's children, and enjoy the liberties and privileges of that relationship.<sup>254</sup> They are given His name,<sup>255</sup> receive the spirit of adoption,<sup>256</sup> have bold access to the throne of grace,<sup>257</sup> are enabled to cry, "Abba, Father."<sup>258</sup> They are pitied,<sup>259</sup> protected,<sup>260</sup> provided for,<sup>261</sup> and chastened by Him, as by a Father:<sup>262</sup>

---

to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness. IJO 2:1 My little children, these things write I to you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: 2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

<sup>250</sup> LUK 22:32 But I have prayed for you, that your faith fail not: and when you are converted, strengthen your brethren. JOH 10:28 And I give to them eternal life; and they will never perish, nor will any man pluck them out of my hand. HEB 10:14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are sanctified.

<sup>251</sup> PSA 89:31 If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; 32 Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. 33 Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail. PSA 51:7 Purge me with hyssop, and I will be clean: wash me, and I will be whiter than snow. 8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which you have broken may rejoice. 9 Hide your face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities. 10 Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. 11 Cast me not away from your presence; and take not your holy spirit from me. 12 Restore to me the joy of your salvation; and uphold me with your free spirit. PSA 32:5 I acknowledged my sin to you, and my iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions to the Lord; and you forgave the iniquity of my sin. MAT 26:75 And Peter remembered the word of Jesus, which said to him, Before the cock crow, you will deny me thrice. And he went out, and wept bitterly. 1CO 11:30 For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. 32 But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world. LUK 1:20 And, behold, you will be dumb, and not able to speak, until the day that these things will be performed, because you believe not my words, which will be fulfilled in their season.

<sup>252</sup> GAL 3:9 So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham. 13 Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangs on a tree: 14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith. ROM 4:22 And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness. 23 Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him; 24 But for us also, to whom it will be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead. HEB 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and today, and forever.

<sup>253</sup> EPH 1:5 Having predestined us to the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will. GAL 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, 5 To redeem those who were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

<sup>254</sup> ROM 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together. JOH 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to those who believe on his name.

<sup>255</sup> JER 14:9 Why should you be as a man astonished, as a mighty man that cannot save? yet you, O Lord, are in the midst of us, and we are called by your name; leave us not. 2CO 6:18 And will be a Father to you, and you will be my sons and daughters, says the Lord Almighty. REV 3:12 Him that overcomes will I make a pillar in the temple of my God, and he will go no more out: and I will write upon him the name of my God, and the name of the city of my God, which is new Jerusalem, which comes down out of heaven from my God: and I will write upon him my new name.

<sup>256</sup> ROM 8:15 For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but you have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

<sup>257</sup> EPH 3:12 In whom we have boldness and access with confidence by the faith of him. ROM 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

<sup>258</sup> GAL 4:6 And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

<sup>259</sup> PSA 103:13 Like as a father pities his children, so the Lord pities those who fear him.

<sup>260</sup> PRO 14:26 In the fear of the Lord is strong confidence: and his children will have a place of refuge.

<sup>261</sup> MAT 6:30 Which is why, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith? 32 For after all these things do the Gentiles seek: for your heavenly Father knows that you have need of all these things. 1PE 5:7 Casting all your care upon him; for he cares for you.

<sup>262</sup> HEB 12:6 For whom the Lord loves he chastens, and scourges every son whom he receives.

They are never cast off,<sup>263</sup> but sealed until the day of redemption.<sup>264</sup> They will inherit the promises<sup>265</sup> as heirs of everlasting salvation.<sup>266</sup>

---

## Chapter 13 - Sanctification

1. Those who are effectually called and regenerated, having a new heart, and a new spirit created in them, are further sanctified, really and personally, by virtue of Christ's death and resurrection,<sup>267</sup> and by His Word and Spirit dwelling in them.<sup>268</sup> The control of the whole body of sin is destroyed,<sup>269</sup> and its various lusts are more and more weakened and put to death.<sup>270</sup> Those who are called and regenerated are more and more enlivened and strengthened in all saving graces<sup>271</sup> leading to the practice of true holiness, without which no man shall see the Lord.<sup>272</sup>

2. This sanctification is throughout the whole man.<sup>273</sup> Yet it is imperfect in this life. There still abides some remnants of corruption in every part.<sup>274</sup> From this arises a continual and irreconcilable war, the flesh lusting against the desires of the Spirit, and the Spirit against the desires of the flesh.<sup>275</sup>

3. Although the remaining corruption may prevail for a time in this war,<sup>276</sup> yet, through the continual supply of strength from the sanctifying Spirit of Christ, the regenerate nature does overcome.<sup>277</sup> And so the saints grow in grace,<sup>278</sup> perfecting holiness in the fear of God.<sup>279</sup>

---

<sup>263</sup> LAM 3:31 For the Lord will not cast off forever.

<sup>264</sup> EPH 4:30 And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed to the day of redemption.

<sup>265</sup> HEB 6:12 That you will not be slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises.

<sup>266</sup> IPE 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, which according to his abundant mercy has begotten us again to a lively hope by the resurrection of Jesus Christ from the dead, 4 To an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fades not away, reserved in heaven for you. HEB 1:14 Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who will be heirs of salvation?

<sup>267</sup> ICO 6:11 And such were some of you: but you are washed, but you are sanctified, but you are justified in the name of the Lord Jesus, and by the Spirit of our God. ACT 20:32 And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all those who are sanctified. PHI 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable to his death; ROM 6:5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we will be also in the likeness of his resurrection: 6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin.

<sup>268</sup> JOH 17:17 Sanctify them through your truth: your word is truth. EPH 5:26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word. 2TH 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks always to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God has from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth.

<sup>269</sup> ROM 6:6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. 14 For sin will not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace.

<sup>270</sup> GAL 5:24 And those who are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts. ROM 8:13 For if you live after the flesh, you will die: but if you through the Spirit do mortify the deeds of the body, you will live.

<sup>271</sup> COL 1:11 Strengthened with all might, according to his glorious power, to all patience and longsuffering with joyfulness. EPH 3:16 That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; 17 That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; 19 And to know the love of Christ, which passes knowledge, that you might be filled with all the fullness of God.

<sup>272</sup> 2CO 7:1 Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God. HEB 12:14 Follow peace with all men, and holiness, without which no man will see the Lord.

<sup>273</sup> 1TH 5:23 And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless to the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

<sup>274</sup> IJO 1:10 If we say that we have not sinned, we make him a liar, and his word is not in us. ROM 7:18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh) dwells no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform what is good I find not. 23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members. PHI 3:12 Not as though I had already attained, either were already perfect: but I follow after, if that I may apprehend that for which also I am apprehended of Christ Jesus.

<sup>275</sup> GAL 5:17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would. IPE 2:11 Dearly beloved, I beseech you as strangers and pilgrims, abstain from fleshly lusts, which war against the soul.

---

## Chapter 14 - Saving Faith

1. The grace of faith, by which the elect are enabled to believe to save their souls,<sup>280</sup> is the work of the Spirit of Christ in their hearts.<sup>281</sup> It is ordinarily produced through the ministry of the Word.<sup>282</sup> It is also increased and strengthened by the Word, and by the administration of the sacraments and prayer.<sup>283</sup>

2. By this faith, a Christian believes whatever is revealed in the Word to be true, for the authority of God Himself speaking in it.<sup>284</sup> He also responds differently to what each particular passage contains, obeying its commands,<sup>285</sup> trembling at its threats,<sup>286</sup> and embracing the promises of God for this life and the life that is to come.<sup>287</sup> But the principal acts of saving faith are accepting, receiving, and resting on Christ alone for justification, sanctification, and eternal life, by virtue of the covenant of grace.<sup>288</sup>

---

<sup>276</sup> ROM 7:23 But I see another law in my members, warring against the law of my mind, and bringing me into captivity to the law of sin which is in my members.

<sup>277</sup> ROM 6:14 For sin will not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace. 1JO 5:4 For whatever is born of God overcomes the world: and this is the victory that overcomes the world, even our faith. EPH 4:15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ: 16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by what every joint supplies, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, makes increase of the body to the edifying of itself in love.

<sup>278</sup> 2PE 3:18 But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and forever. Amen. 2CO 3:18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

<sup>279</sup> 2CO 7:1 Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.

<sup>280</sup> HEB 10:39 But we are not of them who draw back to perdition; but of those who believe to the saving of the soul.

<sup>281</sup> 2CO 4:13 We having the same spirit of faith, just as it is written, I believed, and therefore have I spoken; we also believe, and therefore speak. EPH 1:17 That the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, may give to you the spirit of wisdom and revelation in the knowledge of him: 18 The eyes of your understanding being enlightened; that you may know what is the hope of his calling, and what the riches of the glory of his inheritance in the saints, 19 And what is the exceeding greatness of his power toward us who believe, according to the working of his mighty power. 2:8 For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God.

<sup>282</sup> ROM 10:14 How then will they call on him in whom they have not believed? and how will they believe in him of whom they have not heard? and how will they hear without a preacher? 17 So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

<sup>283</sup> 1PE 2:2 As newborn babes, desire the sincere milk of the word, that you may grow thereby. ACT 20:32 And now, brethren, I commend you to God, and to the word of his grace, which is able to build you up, and to give you an inheritance among all those who are sanctified. ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those that believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also. LUK 17:5 And the apostles said to the Lord, Increase our faith. ROM 1:16 For I am not ashamed of the gospel of Christ: for it is the power of God to salvation to every one that believes; to the Jew first, and also to the Greek. 17 For in it is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just will live by faith.

<sup>284</sup> JOH 4:42 And said to the woman, Now we believe, not because of your saying: for we have heard him ourselves, and know that this is indeed the Christ, the Savior of the world. 1TH 2:13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when you received the word of God that you heard of us, you received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually works also in you that believe. 1JO 5:10 One who believes on the Son of God has the witness in himself: one who believes not God has made him a liar; because he believes not the record that God gave of his Son. ACT 24:14 But this I confess to you, that after the way which they call heresy, so worship I the God of my fathers, believing all things which are written in the law and in the prophets.

<sup>285</sup> ROM 16:26 But now is made manifest, and by the scriptures of the prophets, according to the commandment of the everlasting God, made known to all nations for the obedience of faith.

<sup>286</sup> ISA 66:2 For all those things has my hand made, and those things have been, says the Lord: but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembles at my word.

<sup>287</sup> HEB 11:13 These all died in faith, not having received the promises, but having seen them afar off, and were persuaded of them, and embraced them, and confessed that they were strangers and pilgrims on the earth. 1TI 4:8 For bodily exercise profits little: but godliness is profitable to all things, having promise of the life that now is, and of what is to come.

<sup>288</sup> JOH 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to those who believe on his name. ACT 16:31 And they said, Believe on the Lord Jesus Christ, and you will be saved, and your house. GAL 2:20 I am crucified with Christ: nevertheless I live; yet not I, but Christ lives in me: and the life which I now live in the flesh I live by the faith of the Son of God,

3. This faith varies in degrees. It may be weak or strong.<sup>289</sup> It may often, and in many ways, be assailed and weakened, but it gets the victory.<sup>290</sup> It matures in many to the attainment of a full assurance through Christ,<sup>291</sup> who is both the author and the finisher of our faith.<sup>292</sup>

---

## Chapter 15 - Of Repentance to Life

1. Repentance to obtain life is a personal grace,<sup>293</sup> the doctrine of which is to be preached by every minister of the Gospel, just as faith in Christ is preached.<sup>294</sup>

2. On understanding God's mercy in Christ to those who repent, a sinner grieves for and hates his sins. By repentance, he turns from all of them to God,<sup>295</sup> purposefully endeavoring to walk with Him in all the ways that he

---

who loved me, and gave himself for me. ACT 15:11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we will be saved, even as they.

<sup>289</sup> HEB 5:13 For every one that uses milk is unskillful in the word of righteousness: for he is a babe. 14 But strong meat belongs to those who are of full age, even those who by reason of use have their senses exercised to discern both good and evil. ROM 4:19 And being not weak in faith, he did not consider his own body now dead, when he was about a hundred years old, nor yet the deadness of Sara's womb: 20 He staggered not at the promise of God through unbelief; but was strong in faith, giving glory to God. MAT 6:30 Which is why, if God so clothe the grass of the field, which today is, and tomorrow is cast into the oven, will he not much more clothe you, O you of little faith? MAT 8:10 When Jesus heard it, he marvelled, and said to those who followed, Truly I say to you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel.

<sup>290</sup> LUK 22:31 And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan has desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat: 32 But I have prayed for you, that your faith fail not: and when you are converted, strengthen your brethren. EPH 6:16 Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith you will be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked. 1JO 5:4 For whatever is born of God overcomes the world: and this is the victory that overcomes the world, even our faith. 5 Who is the one who overcomes the world, but the one who believes that Jesus is the Son of God?

<sup>291</sup> HEB 6:11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope to the end: 12 That you will not be slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises. HEB 10:22 Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water. COL 2:2 That their hearts might be comforted, being knit together in love, and to all riches of the full assurance of understanding, to the acknowledgement of the mystery of God, and of the Father, and of Christ.

<sup>292</sup> HEB 12:2 Looking to Jesus the author and finisher of our faith; who for the joy that was set before him endured the cross, despising the shame, and is set down at the right hand of the throne of God.

<sup>293</sup> ZEC 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they will look upon me whom they have pierced, and they will mourn for him, as one mourns for his only son, and will be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn. ACT 11:18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then has God also to the Gentiles granted repentance to life.

<sup>294</sup> LUK 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem. MAR 1:15 And saying, The time is fulfilled, and the kingdom of God is at hand: repent you, and believe the gospel. ACT 20:21 Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

<sup>295</sup> EZE 18:30 Therefore I will judge you, O house of Israel, every one according to his ways, says the Lord God. Repent, and turn yourselves from all your transgressions; so iniquity will not be your ruin. 31 Cast away from you all your transgressions, whereby you have transgressed; and make you a new heart and a new spirit: for why will you die, O house of Israel? 36:31 Then will you remember your own evil ways, and your doings that were not good, and will loathe yourselves in your own sight for your iniquities and for your abominations. ISA 30:22 you will defile also the covering of your graven images of silver, and the ornament of your molten images of gold: you will cast them away as a menstruous cloth; you will say to it, Get away. PSA 51:4 Against you, you only, have I sinned, and done this evil in your sight: that you might be justified when you speak, and be clear when you judges. JER 31:18 I have surely heard Ephraim bemoaning himself thus; you have chastised me, and I was chastised, as a bullock unaccustomed to the yoke: turn you me, and I will be turned; for you are the Lord my God. 19 Surely after that I was turned, I repented; and after that I was instructed, I struck upon my thigh: I was ashamed, yes, even confounded, because I did bear the reproach of my youth. JOE 2:12 Therefore also now, says the Lord, turn you even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning: 13 And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn to the Lord your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repents him of the evil. AMO 5:15 Hate the evil, and love the good, and establish judgment in the gate: it may be that the Lord God of hosts will be gracious to the remnant of Joseph. PSA 119:128 Therefore I esteem all your precepts concerning all things to be right; and I hate every false way. 2CO 7:11 For behold this selfsame thing, that you sorrowed after a godly sort, what carefulness it worked in you, yes, what clearing of yourselves, yes, what indignation, yes, what fear, yes, what vehement desire, yes, what zeal, yes, what revenge! In all things you have approved yourselves to be clear in this matter.

commands.<sup>296</sup> He does this because he sees and senses not only the danger, but also the filthiness and repugnance of his sins. He sees they are contrary to God's holy nature and his righteous law.

3. Repentance is not to be relied on as a payment for sin, or as any reason to pardon sin,<sup>297</sup> which is the act of God's free grace in Christ.<sup>298</sup> Yet, repentance is so necessary for all sinners, that no one may expect pardon without it.<sup>299</sup>

4. No sin is so small that it does not deserve damnation.<sup>300</sup> Nor is any sin so great that it can bring damnation upon those who truly repent.<sup>301</sup>

5. No one should be content with a general repentance; rather, it is everyone's duty to endeavor to repent of each sin in particular.<sup>302</sup>

6. Everyone is bound to make private confession of his sins to God, praying for their pardon.<sup>303</sup> Upon doing so, and forsaking those sins, he shall find mercy.<sup>304</sup> Similarly, anyone who scandalizes his brother, or the Church of Christ, ought to be willing to declare his repentance to those he offended, by private or public confession, with sorrow for his sin.<sup>305</sup> They are then to be reconciled to him and receive him in love.<sup>306</sup>

---

<sup>296</sup> PSA 119:6 Then will I not be ashamed, when I have respect to all your commandments. 59 I thought on my ways, and turned my feet to your testimonies. 106 I have sworn, and I will perform it, that I will keep your righteous judgments. LUK 1:6 And they were both righteous before God, walking in all the commandments and ordinances of the Lord blameless. 2KI 23:25 And like to him was there no king before him, that turned to the Lord with all his heart, and with all his soul, and with all his might, according to all the law of Moses; nor after him arose there any like him.

<sup>297</sup> EZE 36:31 Then will you remember your own evil ways, and your doings that were not good, and will loathe yourselves in your own sight for your iniquities and for your abominations. 32 Not for your sakes do I this, says the Lord God, be it known to you: be ashamed and confounded for your own ways, O house of Israel. EZE 16:61 Then you will remember your ways, and be ashamed, when you will receive your sisters, your elder and your younger: and I will give them to you for daughters, but not by your covenant. 62 And I will establish my covenant with you; and you will know that I am the Lord: 63 That you may remember, and be confounded, and never open your mouth any more because of your shame, when I am pacified toward you for all that you have done, says the Lord God.

<sup>298</sup> HOS 14:2 Take with you words, and turn to the Lord: say to him, Take away all iniquity, and receive us graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips. 4 I will heal their backsliding, I will love them freely: for my anger is turned away from him. ROM 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus. EPH 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace.

<sup>299</sup> LUK 13:3 I tell you, No: but, except you repent, you will all likewise perish. ACT 17:30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commands all men every where to repent: 31 Because he has appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he has ordained; whereof he has given assurance to all men, in that he has raised him from the dead.

<sup>300</sup> ROM 6:23 For the wages of sin is death; but the gift of God is eternal life through Jesus Christ our Lord. ROM 5:12 Which is why, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned. MAT 12:36 But I say to you, That every idle word that men will speak, they will give account of it in the day of judgment.

<sup>301</sup> ISA 55:7 Let the wicked forsake his way, and the unrighteous man his thoughts: and let him return to the Lord, and he will have mercy upon him; and to our God, for he will abundantly pardon. ROM 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. ISA 1:16 Wash you, make you clean; put away the evil of your doings from before my eyes; cease to do evil. 18 Come now, and let us reason together, says the Lord: though your sins be as scarlet, they will be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they will be as wool.

<sup>302</sup> PSA 19:13 Keep back your servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me: then will I be upright, and I will be innocent from the great transgression. LUK 19:8 And Zacchaeus stood, and said to the Lord; Behold, Lord, the half of my goods I give to the poor; and if I have taken anything from any man by false accusation, I restore him fourfold. 1TI 1:13 Who was before a blasphemer, and a persecutor, and injurious: but I obtained mercy, because I did it ignorantly in unbelief. 15 This is a faithful saying, and worthy of all acceptance, that Christ Jesus came into the world to save sinners; of whom I am chief.

<sup>303</sup> PSA 51:4 Against you, you only, have I sinned, and done this evil in your sight: that you might be justified when you speak, and be clear when you judges. 5 Behold, I was shaped in iniquity; and in sin did my mother conceive me. 7 Purge me with hyssop, and I will be clean: wash me, and I will be whiter than snow. 9 Hide your face from my sins, and blot out all my iniquities. 14 Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, you God of my salvation: and my tongue will sing aloud of your righteousness. PSA 32:5 I acknowledged my sin to you, and my iniquity have I not hid. I said, I will confess my transgressions to the Lord; and you forgave the iniquity of my sin. 6 For this will every one that is godly pray to you in a time when you may be found: surely in the floods of great waters they will not come near to him.

<sup>304</sup> PRO 28:13 The one who covers his sins will not prosper: but whoso confesses and forsakes them will have mercy. 1JO 1:9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

<sup>305</sup> JAM 5:16 Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that you may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much. LUK 17:3 Take heed to yourselves: If your brother trespass against you, rebuke him; and if he repent, forgive him. 4 And if he trespass against you seven times in a day, and seven times in a day turn again to you, saying, I repent; you will



---

## Chapter 16 - Good Works

1. Good works are only such as God has commanded in His holy Word,<sup>307</sup> and not such as, without the warrant thereof, are devised by men, out of blind zeal, or upon any pretence of good intention.<sup>308</sup>

2. These good works, done in obedience to God's commandments, are the fruits and evidences of a true and lively faith:<sup>309</sup> and by them believers manifest their thankfulness,<sup>310</sup> strengthen their assurance,<sup>311</sup> edify their brethren,<sup>312</sup> adorn the profession of the Gospel,<sup>313</sup> stop the mouths of the adversaries,<sup>314</sup> and glorify God,<sup>315</sup> whose workmanship they are, created in Christ Jesus thereto,<sup>316</sup> that, having their fruit to holiness, they may have the end, eternal life.<sup>317</sup>

---

forgive him. JOS 7:19 And Joshua said to Achan, My son, give, I pray you, glory to the Lord God of Israel, and make confession to him; and tell me now what you have done; hide it not from me. (PSA 51 throughout)

<sup>306</sup> 2CO 2:8 Which is why I beseech you that you would confirm your love toward him.

<sup>307</sup> MIC 6:8 He has showed you, O man, what is good; and what does the Lord require of you, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with your God? ROM 12:2 And do not be conformed to this world: but be transformed by the renewing of your mind, that you may prove what is that good, and acceptable, and perfect, will of God. HEB 13:21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you what is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen.

<sup>308</sup> MAT 15:9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men. ISA 29:13 Which is why the Lord said, Forasmuch as this people draw near me with their mouth, and with their lips do honor me, but have removed their heart far from me, and their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men. IPE 1:18 Forasmuch as you know that you were not redeemed with corruptible things, as silver and gold, from your vain conversation received by tradition from your fathers. ROM 10:2 For I bear them record that they have a zeal of God, but not according to knowledge. JOH 16:2 They will put you out of the synagogues: yes, the time comes, that whoever kills you will think that he does God service. ISA 15:21 But the people took of the spoil, sheep and oxen, the chief of the things which should have been utterly destroyed, to sacrifice to the Lord your God in Gilgal. 22 And Samuel said, Has the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices, as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams. 23 For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as iniquity and idolatry. Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, he has also rejected you from being king.

<sup>309</sup> JAM 2:18 Yes, a man may say, you have faith, and I have works: show me your faith without your works, and I will show you my faith by my works. 22 Do you see how faith worked with his works, and by works was faith made perfect?

<sup>310</sup> PSA 116:12 What will I render to the Lord for all his benefits toward me? 13 I will take the cup of salvation, and call upon the name of the Lord. IPE 2:9 But you are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, a holy nation, a peculiar people; that you should show forth the praises of him who has called you out of darkness into his marvellous light.

<sup>311</sup> IJO 2:3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. 5 But whoso keeps his word, in him truly is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him. 2PE 1:5 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge; 6 And to knowledge temperance; and to temperance patience; and to patience godliness; 7 And to godliness brotherly kindness; and to brotherly kindness charity. 8 For if these things are in you, and abound, they make you that you will neither be barren nor unfruitful in the knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ. 9 But the one who lacks these things is blind, and cannot see afar off, and has forgotten that he was purged from his old sins. 10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall.

<sup>312</sup> 2CO 9:2 For I know the forwardness of your mind, for which I boast of you to them of Macedonia, that Achaia was ready a year ago; and your zeal has provoked very many. MAT 5:16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

<sup>313</sup> TIT 2:5 To be discreet, chaste, keepers at home, good, obedient to their own husbands, that the word of God is not blasphemed. 9 Exhort servants to be obedient to their own masters, and to please them well in all things; not answering again; 10 Not purloining, but showing all good fidelity; that they may adorn the doctrine of God our Savior in all things. 11 For the grace of God that brings salvation has appeared to all men, 12 Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world. 1TI 6:1 Let as many servants as are under the yoke count their own masters worthy of all honor, that the name of God and his doctrine is not blasphemed.

<sup>314</sup> IPE 2:15 For so is the will of God, that with well doing you may put to silence the ignorance of foolish men.

<sup>315</sup> IPE 2:12 Having your conversation honest among the Gentiles: that, whereas they speak against you as evildoers, they may by your good works, which they will behold, glorify God in the day of visitation. PHI 1:11 Being filled with the fruits of righteousness, which are by Jesus Christ, to the glory and praise of God. JOH 15:8 Herein is my Father glorified, that you bear much fruit; so you will be my disciples.

<sup>316</sup> EPH 2:10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus to good works, which God has before ordained that we should walk in them.

<sup>317</sup> ROM 6:22 But now being made free from sin, and become servants to God, you have your fruit to holiness, and the end everlasting life.

3. Their ability to do good works is not at all of themselves, but wholly from the Spirit of Christ.<sup>318</sup> And that they may be enabled thereto, beside the graces they have already received, there is required an actual influence of the same Holy Spirit, to work in them to will, and to do, of His good pleasure:<sup>319</sup> yet are they not hereupon to grow negligent, as if they were not bound to perform any duty unless upon a special motion of the Spirit; but they ought to be diligent in stirring up the grace of God that is in them.<sup>320</sup>

4. They who, in their obedience, attain to the greatest height which is possibly in this life, are so far from being able to supererogate, and to do more than God requires, as that they fall short of much which in duty they are bound to do.<sup>321</sup>

5. We cannot by our best works merit pardon of sin, or eternal life at the hand of God, by reason of the great disproportion that is between them and the glory to come; and the infinite distance that is between us and God, whom, by them, we can neither profit, nor satisfy for the debt of our former sins,<sup>322</sup> but when we have done all we can, we have done but our duty, and are unprofitable servants.<sup>323</sup> and because, as they are good, they proceed from

---

<sup>318</sup> JOH 15:4 Abide in me, and I in you. As the branch cannot bear fruit of itself, except it abide in the vine; no more can you, except you abide in me. 5 I am the vine, you are the branches: The one who abides in me, and I in him, the same brings forth much fruit: for without me you can do nothing. 6 If a man abide not in me, he is cast forth as a branch, and is withered; and men gather them, and cast them into the fire, and they are burned. EZE 36:26 A new heart also will I give you, and a new spirit will I put within you: and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh, and I will give you a heart of flesh. 27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and you will keep my judgments, and do them.

<sup>319</sup> PHI 2:13 For it is God which works in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure. 4:13 I can do all things through Christ which strengthens me. 2CO 3:5 Not that we are sufficient of ourselves to think anything as of ourselves; but our sufficiency is of God.

<sup>320</sup> PHI 2:12 Which is why, my beloved, as you have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling. HEB 6:11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope to the end: 12 That you will not be slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises. 2PE 1:3 Just as his divine power has given to us all things that pertain to life and godliness, through the knowledge of him that has called us to glory and virtue. 5 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge. 10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall: 11 For so an introduction will be ministered to you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. ISA 64:7 And there is none that calls upon your name, that stirs himself up to take hold of you: for you have hid your face from us, and have consumed us, because of our iniquities. 2TI 1:6 Which is why I put you in remembrance that you stir up the gift of God, which is in you by the putting on of my hands. ACT 26:6 And now I stand and am judged for the hope of the promise made of God to our fathers: 7 To which promise our twelve tribes, instantly serving God day and night, hope to come. For which hope's sake, king Agrippa, I am accused of the Jews. JUD 20 But you, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Spirit, 21 Keep yourselves in the love of God, looking for the mercy of our Lord Jesus Christ to eternal life.

<sup>321</sup> LUK 17:10 So likewise you, when you will have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done what was our duty to do. NEH 13:22 And I commanded the Levites that they should cleanse themselves, and that they should come and keep the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. Remember me, O my God, concerning this also, and spare me according to the greatness of your mercy. JOB 9:2 I know it is so of a truth: but how should man be just with God? 3 If he will contend with him, he cannot answer him one of a thousand. GAL 5:17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would.

<sup>322</sup> ROM 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there will no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin. ROM 4:2 For if Abraham were justified by works, he has whereof to glory; but not before God. 4 Now to him that works is the reward not reckoned of grace, but of debt. 6 Even as David also describes the blessedness of the man, to whom God imputes righteousness without works. EPH 2:8 For by grace are you saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God: 9 Not of works, lest any man should boast. TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit; 6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Savior; 7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life. ROM 8:18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which will be revealed in us. PSA 16:2 O my soul, you have said to the Lord, You are my Lord: my goodness extends not to you. JOB 22:2 Can a man be profitable to God, as one who is wise may be profitable to himself? 3 Is it any pleasure to the Almighty, that you are righteous? or is it gain to him that you make your ways perfect? 35:7 If you be righteous, what do you give him? or what does he receive of your hand? 8 your wickedness may hurt a man as you are; and your righteousness may profit the son of man.

<sup>323</sup> LUK 17:10 So likewise you, when you will have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done what was our duty to do.

His Spirit,<sup>324</sup> and as they are wrought by us, they are defiled, and mixed with so much weakness and imperfection, that they cannot endure the severity of God's judgment.<sup>325</sup>

6. Notwithstanding, the persons of believers being accepted through Christ, their good works also are accepted in Him;<sup>326</sup> not as though they were in this life wholly unblamable and unreproveable in God's sight;<sup>327</sup> but that He, looking upon them in His Son, is pleased to accept and reward that which is sincere, although accompanied with many weaknesses and imperfections.<sup>328</sup>

7. Works done by unregenerate men, although for the matter of them they may be things which God commands; and of good use both to themselves and others:<sup>329</sup> yet, because they proceed not from a heart purified by faith;<sup>330</sup> nor are done in a right manner, according to the Word;<sup>331</sup> nor to a right end, the glory of God,<sup>332</sup> they are therefore sinful and cannot please God, or make a man meet to receive grace from God:<sup>333</sup> and yet, their neglect of them is more sinful and displeasing to God.<sup>334</sup>

---

<sup>324</sup> GAL 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, 23 meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

<sup>325</sup> ISA 64:6 But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away. GAL 5:17 For the flesh lusts against the Spirit, and the Spirit against the flesh: and these are contrary the one to the other: so that you cannot do the things that you would. ROM 7:15 For what I do I allow not: for what I would, that do I not; but what I hate, that do I. 18 For I know that in me (that is, in my flesh,) dwells no good thing: for to will is present with me; but how to perform what is good I find not. PSA 143:2 And enter not into judgment with your servant: for in your sight will no man living be justified. PSA 130:3 If you, Lord, should mark iniquities, O Lord, who will stand?

<sup>326</sup> EPH 1:6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, in which he has made us accepted in the beloved. 1PE 2:5 you also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ. EXO 28:38 And it will be upon Aaron's forehead, that Aaron may bear the iniquity of the holy things, which the children of Israel will hallow in all their holy gifts; and it will be always upon his forehead, that they may be accepted before the Lord. GEN 4:4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat of it. And the Lord had respect to Abel and to his offering. HEB 11:4 By faith Abel offered to God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaks.

<sup>327</sup> JOB 9:20 If I justify myself, my own mouth will condemn me: if I say, I am perfect, it will also prove me perverse. PSA 143:2 And enter not into judgment with your servant: for in your sight will no man living be justified.

<sup>328</sup> HEB 13:20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, 21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you what is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen. 2CO 8:12 For if there be first a willing mind, it is accepted according to what a man has, and not according to what he does not have. HEB 6:10 For God is not unrighteous to forget your work and labor of love, which you have showed toward his name, in that you have ministered to the saints, and do minister. MAT 25:21 His lord said to him, Well done, you good and faithful servant: you have been faithful over a few things, I will make you ruler over many things: enter you into the joy of your lord. 23 His lord said to him, Well done, good and faithful servant; you have been faithful over a few things, I will make you ruler over many things: enter you into the joy of your lord.

<sup>329</sup> 2KI 10:30 And the Lord said to Jehu, Because you have done well in executing what is right in my eyes, and have done to the house of Ahab according to all that was in my heart, your children of the fourth generation will sit on the throne of Israel. 31 But Jehu took no heed to walk in the law of the Lord God of Israel with all his heart: for he departed not from the sins of Jeroboam, which made Israel to sin. 1KI 21:27 And it came to pass, when Ahab heard those words, that he rent his clothes, and put sackcloth upon his flesh, and fasted, and lay in sackcloth, and went softly. 29 Do you see how Ahab humbles himself before me? because he humbles himself before me, I will not bring the evil in his days: but in his son's days will I bring the evil upon his house. PHI 1:15 Some indeed preach Christ even of envy and strife; and some also of good will: PHI 1:16 The one preach Christ of contention, not sincerely, supposing to add affliction to my bonds. 18 What then? notwithstanding, every way, whether in pretence, or in truth, Christ is preached; and I do rejoice in it, yes, and I will rejoice.

<sup>330</sup> GEN 4:5 But to Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very angry, and his countenance fell. HEB 11:4 By faith Abel offered to God a more excellent sacrifice than Cain, by which he obtained witness that he was righteous, God testifying of his gifts: and by it he being dead yet speaks. 6 But without faith it is impossible to please him: for one who comes to God must believe that he exists, and that he is a rewarder of those who diligently seek him.

<sup>331</sup> ICO 13:3 And though I bestow all my goods to feed the poor, and though I give my body to be burned, and have not charity, it profits me nothing. ISA 1:12 When you come to appear before me, who has required this at your hand, to tread my courts?

<sup>332</sup> MAT 6:2 Therefore when you do your alms, do not sound a trumpet before you, as the hypocrites do in the synagogues and in the streets, that they may have glory of men. Truly I say to you, They have their reward. 5 And when you pray, you will not be as the hypocrites are: for they love to pray standing in the synagogues and in the corners of the streets, that they may be seen of men. Truly I say to you, They have their reward. 16 Moreover when you fast, do not be, as the hypocrites, of a sad countenance: for they disfigure their faces, that they may appear to men to fast. Truly I say to you, They have their reward.

<sup>333</sup> HAG 2:14 Then answered Haggai, and said, So is this people, and so is this nation before me, says the Lord; and so is every work of their hands; and what they offer there is unclean. TIT 1:15 To the pure all things are pure: but to those who are defiled and unbelieving is

---

## Chapter 17 - Of the Perseverance of the Saints

1. They, whom God has accepted in His Beloved, effectually called, and sanctified by His Spirit, can neither totally nor finally fall away from the state of grace, but shall certainly persevere therein to the end, and be eternally saved.<sup>335</sup>
2. This perseverance of the saints depends not upon their own free will, but upon the immutability of the decree of election, flowing from the free and unchangeable love of God the Father;<sup>336</sup> upon the efficacy of the merit and

---

nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled. AMO 5:21 I hate, I despise your feast days, and I will not smell in your solemn assemblies. 22 Though you offer me burnt offerings and your meat offerings, I will not accept them: nor will I regard the peace offerings of your fat beasts. HOS 1:4 And the Lord said to him, Call his name Jezreel; for yet a little while, and I will avenge the blood of Jezreel upon the house of Jehu, and will cause to cease the kingdom of the house of Israel. ROM 9:16 So then it is not of the one who wills, nor of the one who runs, but of God who shows mercy. TIT 3:15 All who are with me salute you. Greet those who love us in the faith. Grace be with you all. Amen.

<sup>334</sup> PSA 14:4 Have all the workers of iniquity no knowledge? who eat up my people as they eat bread, and call not upon the Lord. 36:3 The words of his mouth are iniquity and deceit: he has left off to be wise, and to do good. JOB 21:14 Therefore they say to God, Depart from us; for we desire not the knowledge of your ways. 15 What is the Almighty, that we should serve him? and what profit should we have, if we pray to him? MAT 25:41 Then he will say also to them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels: 42 For I was hungry, and you gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink: 43 I was a stranger, and you took me not in: naked, and you clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and you visited me not. 45 Then will he answer them, saying, Truly I say to you, Inasmuch as you did it not to one of the least of these, you did it not to me. MAT 23:23 Woe to you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for you pay tithe of mint and anise and cummin, and have omitted the weightier matters of the law, judgment, mercy, and faith: these ought you to have done, and not to leave the other undone.

<sup>335</sup> PHI 1:6 Being confident of this very thing, that he which has begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ. 2PE 1:10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall. JOH 10:28 And I give to them eternal life; and they will never perish, nor will any man pluck them out of my hand. 29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand. 1JO 3:9 Whoever is born of God does not commit sin; for his seed remains in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God. 1PE 1:5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith to salvation ready to be revealed in the last time. 9 Receiving the end of your faith, even the salvation of your souls.

<sup>336</sup> 2TI 2:18 Who concerning the truth have erred, saying that the resurrection is past already; and overthrow the faith of some. 19 Nevertheless the foundation of God stands sure, having this seal: The Lord knows those who are his. And, Let every one that names the name of Christ depart from iniquity. JER 31:3 The Lord has appeared of old to me, saying, Yes, I have loved you with an everlasting love: therefore with lovingkindness have I drawn you.

intercession of Jesus Christ,<sup>337</sup> the abiding of the Spirit, and of the seed of God within them,<sup>338</sup> and the nature of the covenant of grace.<sup>339</sup> from all which arises also the certainty and infallibility thereof.<sup>340</sup>

3. Nevertheless, they may, through the temptations of Satan and of the world, the prevalency of corruption remaining in them, and the neglect of the means of their preservation, fall into grievous sins;<sup>341</sup> and, for a time, continue therein:<sup>342</sup> whereby they incur God's displeasure,<sup>343</sup> and grieve His Holy Spirit,<sup>344</sup> come to be deprived of some measure of their graces and comforts,<sup>345</sup> have their hearts hardened,<sup>346</sup> and their consciences wounded,<sup>347</sup> hurt and scandalize others,<sup>348</sup> and bring temporal judgments upon themselves.<sup>349</sup>

---

<sup>337</sup> HEB 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all. 14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are sanctified. 20 Now the God of peace, that brought again from the dead our Lord Jesus, that great shepherd of the sheep, through the blood of the everlasting covenant, 21 Make you perfect in every good work to do his will, working in you what is well pleasing in his sight, through Jesus Christ; to whom be glory for ever and ever. Amen. HEB 9:12 Nor by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us. 13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of a heifer sprinkling the unclean, sanctifies to the purifying of the flesh: 14 How much more will the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God? 15 And for this cause he is the mediator of the new testament, that by means of death, for the redemption of the transgressions that were under the first testament, they which are called might receive the promise of eternal inheritance. ROM 8:33 Who will lay anything to the charge of God's elect? It is God that justifies. 34 Who is the one who condemns? It is Christ that died, yes rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also makes intercession for us. 35 Who will separate us from the love of Christ? will tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword? 36 As it is written, For your sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter. 37 No, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us. 38 For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come, 39 Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, will be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord. JOH 17:11 And now I am no more in the world, but these are in the world, and I come to you. Holy Father, keep through your own name those whom you have given me, that they may be one, as we are. 24 Father, I will that they also, whom you have given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which you have given me: for you loved me before the foundation of the world. LUK 22:32 But I have prayed for you, that your faith fail not: and when you are converted, strengthen your brethren. HEB 7:25 Which is why he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come to God by him, seeing he ever lives to make intercession for them.

<sup>338</sup> JOH 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he will give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you forever; 17 Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it sees him not, nor knows him: but you know him; for he dwells with you, and will be in you. 1JO 2:27 But the anointing which you have received of him abides in you, and you need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teaches you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it has taught you, you will abide in him. 1JO 3:9 Whoever is born of God does not commit sin; for his seed remains in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

<sup>339</sup> JER 32:40 And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they will not depart from me.

<sup>340</sup> JOH 10:28 And I give to them eternal life; and they will never perish, nor will any man pluck them out of my hand. 2TH 3:3 But the Lord is faithful, who will establish you, and keep you from evil. 1JO 2:19 They went out from us, but they were not of us; for if they had been of us, they would no doubt have continued with us: but they went out, that they might be made manifest that they were not all of us.

<sup>341</sup> MAT 26:70 But he denied before them all, saying, I know not what you say. 72 And again he denied with an oath, I do not know the man. 74 Then began he to curse and to swear, saying, I know not the man. And immediately the cock crew.

<sup>342</sup> PSA 51 (the title) To the chief musician, A psalm of David, when Nathan the prophet came to him, after he had gone in to Bathsheba. 51:14 Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, you God of my salvation: and my tongue will sing aloud of your righteousness.

<sup>343</sup> ISA 64:5 You meet him that rejoices and works righteousness, those that remember you in your ways: behold, you are angry; for we have sinned: in those is continuance, and we will be saved. 7 And there is none that calls upon your name, that stirs himself up to take hold of you: for you have hid your face from us, and have consumed us, because of our iniquities. 9 Do not be sorely angry, O Lord, nor remember iniquity forever: behold, see, we beseech you, we are all your people. 2SA 11:27 And when the mourning was past, David sent and fetched her to his house, and she became his wife, and bore him a son. But the thing that David had done displeased the Lord.

<sup>344</sup> EPH 4:30 And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed to the day of redemption.

<sup>345</sup> PSA 51:8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which you have broken may rejoice. 10 Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me. 12 Restore to me the joy of your salvation; and uphold me with your free spirit. REV 2:4 Nevertheless I have somewhat against you, because you have left your first love. SON 5:2 I sleep, but my heart wakes: it is the voice of my beloved that knocks, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night. 3 I have put off my coat; how will I put it on? I have washed my feet; how will I defile them? 4 My beloved put in his hand by the hole of the door, and my loins were moved for him. 6 I opened to my beloved; but my beloved had withdrawn himself, and was gone: my soul failed when he spoke: I sought him, but I could not find him; I called him, but he gave me no answer.

<sup>346</sup> ISA 63:17 O Lord, why have you made us to err from your ways, and hardened our heart from your fear? Return for your servants' sake, the tribes of your inheritance. MAR 6:52 For they did not consider the miracle of the loaves: for their heart was hardened. 16:14 Afterward he appeared to the eleven as they sat at meat, and upbraided them with their unbelief and hardness of heart, because they did not believe those who had seen him after he was risen.

---

## Chapter 18 - Of Assurance of Grace and Salvation

1. Although hypocrites and other unregenerate men may vainly deceive themselves with false hopes and carnal presumptions of being in the favor of God, and estate of salvation<sup>350</sup> (which hope of theirs shall perish):<sup>351</sup> yet such as truly believe in the Lord Jesus, and love Him in sincerity, endeavoring to walk in all good conscience before Him, may, in this life, be certainly assured that they are in the state of grace,<sup>352</sup> and may rejoice in the hope of the glory of God, which hope shall never make them ashamed.<sup>353</sup>

2. This certainty is not a bare conjectural and probable persuasion grounded upon a fallible hope;<sup>354</sup> but an infallible assurance of faith founded upon the divine truth of the promises of salvation,<sup>355</sup> the inward evidence of those graces to which these promises are made,<sup>356</sup> the testimony of the Spirit of adoption witnessing with our spirits that we are the children of God,<sup>357</sup> which Spirit is the earnest of our inheritance, whereby we are sealed to the day of redemption.<sup>358</sup>

---

<sup>347</sup> PSA 32:3 When I kept silence, my bones waxed old through my roaring all the day long. 4 For day and night your hand was heavy upon me: my moisture is turned into the drought of summer. Selah. 51:8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which you have broken may rejoice.

<sup>348</sup> 2SA 12:14 However, because by this deed you have given great occasion to the enemies of the Lord to blaspheme, the child also that is born to you will surely die.

<sup>349</sup> PSA 89:31 If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; 32 Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. 1CO 11:32 But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world.

<sup>350</sup> JOB 8:13 So are the paths of all who forget God; and the hypocrite's hope will perish: 14 Whose hope will be cut off, and whose trust will be a spider's web. MIC 3:11 The heads of it judge for reward, and the priests of it teach for hire, and the prophets of it divine for money: yet will they lean upon the Lord, and say, Is not the Lord among us? none evil can come upon us. DEU 29:19 And it come to pass, when he hears the words of this curse, that he bless himself in his heart, saying, I will have peace, though I walk in the imagination of my heart, to add drunkenness to thirst. JOH 8:41 you do the deeds of your father. Then said they to him, We are not born of fornication; we have one Father, even God.

<sup>351</sup> MAT 7:22 Many will say to me in that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in your name? and in your name have cast out devils? and in your name done many wonderful works? 23 And then will I profess to them, I never knew you: depart from me, you that work iniquity.

<sup>352</sup> 1JO 2:3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. 3:14 We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren. One who loves not his brother abides in death. 18 My little children, let us not love in word, nor in tongue; but in deed and in truth. 19 And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and will assure our hearts before him. 21 Beloved, if our heart condemn us not, then have we confidence toward God. 24 And one who keeps his commandments dwells in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abides in us, by the Spirit which he has given us. 1JO 5:13 These things have I written to you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of God.

<sup>353</sup> ROM 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. 5 And hope makes not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given to us.

<sup>354</sup> HEB 6:11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope to the end. 19 Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and steadfast, and which enters into that within the veil.

<sup>355</sup> HEB 6:17 In which God, willing more abundantly to show to the heirs of promise the immutability of his counsel, confirmed it by an oath: 18 That by two unchangeable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie, we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the hope set before us.

<sup>356</sup> 2PE 1:4 Whereby are given to us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these you might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust. 5 And beside this, giving all diligence, add to your faith virtue; and to virtue knowledge. 10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall: 11 For so an introduction will be ministered to you abundantly into the everlasting kingdom of our Lord and Savior Jesus Christ. 1JO 2:3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. 3:14 We know that we have passed from death to life, because we love the brethren. One who loves not his brother abides in death. 2CO 1:12 For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.

<sup>357</sup> ROM 8:15 For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but you have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. 16 The Spirit itself bears witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God.

<sup>358</sup> EPH 1:13 In whom you also trusted, after that you heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that you believed, you were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise, 14 Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the

3. This infallible assurance does not so belong to the essence of faith, but that a true believer may wait long, and conflict with many difficulties, before he be partaker of it:<sup>359</sup> yet, being enabled by the Spirit to know the things which are freely given him of God, he may, without extraordinary revelation in the right use of ordinary means, attain thereto.<sup>360</sup> And therefore it is the duty of every one to give all diligence to make his calling and election sure,<sup>361</sup> that thereby his heart may be enlarged in peace and joy in the Holy Spirit, in love and thankfulness to God, and in strength and cheerfulness in the duties of obedience,<sup>362</sup> the proper fruits of this assurance; so far is it from inclining men to looseness.<sup>363</sup>

4. True believers may have the assurance of their salvation diverse ways shaken, diminished, and intermitted; as, by negligence in preserving of it, by falling into some special sin which wounds the conscience and grieves the Spirit; by some sudden or vehement temptation, by God's withdrawing the light of His countenance, and suffering even such as fear Him to walk in darkness and to have no light:<sup>364</sup> yet are they never so utterly destitute of that seed of

---

purchased possession, to the praise of his glory. 4:30 And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed to the day of redemption. 2CO 1:21 Now he which establishes us with you in Christ, and has anointed us, is God; 22 Who has also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.

<sup>359</sup> IJO 5:13 These things have I written to you that believe on the name of the Son of God; that you may know that you have eternal life, and that you may believe on the name of the Son of God. ISA 1:10 Hear the word of the Lord, you rulers of Sodom; give ear to the law of our God, you people of Gomorrah. MAR 9:24 And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help you my unbelief. (see PSA 88; PSA 77)

<sup>360</sup> 1CO 2:12 Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God. IJO 4:13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he has given us of his Spirit. HEB 6:11 And we desire that every one of you do show the same diligence to the full assurance of hope to the end: 12 That you will not be slothful, but followers of them who through faith and patience inherit the promises. EPH 3:17 That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; 19 And to know the love of Christ, which passes knowledge, that you might be filled with all the fullness of God.

<sup>361</sup> 2PE 1:10 Which is why instead, brethren, give diligence to make your calling and election sure: for if you do these things, you will never fall.

<sup>362</sup> ROM 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: 2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God. 5 And hope makes not ashamed; because the love of God is shed abroad in our hearts by the Holy Spirit which is given to us. 14:17 For the kingdom of God is not meat and drink; but righteousness, and peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit. 15:13 Now the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace in believing, that you may abound in hope, through the power of the Holy Spirit. EPH 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who has blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ: 4 Just as he has chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love. PSA 4:6 There be many that say, Who will show us any good? Lord, lift you up the light of your countenance upon us. 7 you have put gladness in my heart, more than in the time that their corn and their wine increased. 119:32 I will run the way of your commandments, when you will enlarge my heart.

<sup>363</sup> IJO 2:1 My little children, these things write I to you, that you sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous: 2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world. ROM 6:1 What will we say then? Will we continue in sin, that grace may abound? 2 God forbid. How will we, that are dead to sin, live any longer in it? TIT 2:11 For the grace of God that brings salvation has appeared to all men. 12 Teaching us, that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should live soberly, righteously and godly, in this present world. 14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works. 2CO 7:1 Having therefore these promises, dearly beloved, let us cleanse ourselves from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God. ROM 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit. 12 Therefore, brethren, we are debtors, not to the flesh, to live after the flesh. IJO 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it does not yet appear what we will be: but we know that, when he will appear, we will be like him; for we will see him as he is. 3 And every man that has this hope in him purifies himself, even as he is pure. PSA 130:4 But there is forgiveness with you, that you may be feared. IJO 1:6 If we say that we have fellowship with him, and walk in darkness, we lie, and do not the truth: 7 But if we walk in the light, as he is in the light, we have fellowship one with another, and the blood of Jesus Christ his Son cleanses us from all sin.

<sup>364</sup> SON 5:2 I sleep, but my heart wakes: it is the voice of my beloved that knocks, saying, Open to me, my sister, my love, my dove, my undefiled: for my head is filled with dew, and my locks with the drops of the night. 3 I have put off my coat; how will I put it on? I have washed my feet; how will I defile them? 6 I opened to my beloved; but my beloved had withdrawn himself, and was gone: my soul failed when he spoke: I sought him, but I could not find him; I called him, but he gave me no answer. PSA 51:8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which you have broken may rejoice. 12 Restore to me the joy of your salvation; and uphold me with your free spirit. 14 Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, you God of my salvation: and my tongue will sing aloud of your righteousness. EPH 4:30 And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby you are sealed to the day of redemption. 31 Let all bitterness, and wrath, and anger, and clamor, and evil speaking, be put away from you, with all malice. PSA 77:1 I cried to God with my voice, even to God with my voice; and he gave ear to me. 2 In the day of my trouble I sought the Lord: my sore ran in the night, and ceased not: my soul refused to be comforted. 3 I remembered God, and was troubled: I complained, and my spirit was overwhelmed. Selah. 4 You hold my eyes waking: I am so troubled that I cannot speak. 5 I have considered the days of old, the years of ancient times. 6 I call to remembrance my song in the night: I commune with my own heart: and my spirit made diligent search. 7 Will the Lord cast off forever? and will he be

God, and life of faith, that love of Christ and the brethren, that sincerity of heart, and conscience of duty, out of which, by the operation of the Spirit, this assurance may, in due time, be revived;<sup>365</sup> and by the which, in the mean time, they are supported from utter despair.<sup>366</sup>

---

## Chapter 19 - Of the Law of God

1. God gave to Adam a law, as a covenant of works, by which He bound him and all his posterity, to personal, entire, exact, and perpetual obedience, promised life upon the fulfilling, and threatened death upon the breach of it, and endowed him with power and ability to keep it.<sup>367</sup>

2. This law, after his fall, continued to be a perfect rule of righteousness; and, as such, was delivered by God upon Mount Sinai, in ten commandments, and written in two tables:<sup>368</sup> the first four commandments containing our duty towards God; and the other six, our duty to man.<sup>369</sup>

---

favorable no more? 8 Is his mercy clean gone forever? does his promise fail for evermore? 9 Has God forgotten to be gracious? has he in anger shut up his tender mercies? Selah. 10 And I said, This is my infirmity: but I will remember the years of the right hand of the most High. MAT 26:69 Now Peter sat without in the palace: and a damsel came to him, saying, You also were with Jesus of Galilee. 70 But he denied before them all, saying, I know not what you say. 71 And when he was gone out into the porch, another maid saw him, and said to those who were there, This fellow was also with Jesus of Nazareth. 72 And again he denied with an oath, I do not know the man. PSA 31:22 For I said in my haste, I am cut off from before your eyes: nevertheless you heard the voice of my supplications when I cried to you. (PSA 88 throughout) ISA 50:10 Who is among you that fears the Lord, that obeys the voice of his servant, that walks in darkness, and has no light? let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.

<sup>365</sup> IJO 3:9 Whoever is born of God does not commit sin; for his seed remains in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God. LUK 22:32 But I have prayed for you, that your faith fail not: and when you are converted, strengthen your brethren. JOB 13:15 Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him: but I will maintain my own ways before him. PSA 73:15 If I say, I will speak thus; behold, I should offend against the generation of your children. PSA 51:8 Make me to hear joy and gladness; that the bones which you have broken may rejoice. 12 Restore to me the joy of your salvation; and uphold me with your free spirit. ISA 50:10 Who is among you that fears the Lord, that obeys the voice of his servant, that walks in darkness, and has no light? let him trust in the name of the Lord, and stay upon his God.

<sup>366</sup> MIC 7:7 Therefore I will look to the Lord; I will wait for the God of my salvation: my God will hear me. 8 Rejoice not against me, O my enemy: when I fall, I will arise; when I sit in darkness, the Lord will be a light to me. 9 I will bear the indignation of the Lord, because I have sinned against him, until he plead my cause, and execute judgment for me: he will bring me forth to the light, and I will behold his righteousness. JER 32:40 And I will make an everlasting covenant with them, that I will not turn away from them, to do them good; but I will put my fear in their hearts, that they will not depart from me. ISA 54:7 For a small moment have I forsaken you; but with great mercies will I gather you. 8 In a little wrath I hid my face from you for a moment; but with everlasting kindness will I have mercy on you, says the Lord your Redeemer. 9 For this is as the waters of Noah to me: for just as I have sworn that the waters of Noah should no more go over the earth; so have I sworn that I would not be angry with you, nor rebuke you. 10 For the mountains will depart, and the hills be removed; but my kindness will not depart from you, nor will the covenant of my peace be removed, says the Lord that has mercy on you. PSA 22:1 My God, my God, why have you forsaken me? why are you so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring? (PSA 88 throughout)

<sup>367</sup> GEN 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creeps upon the earth. 27 So God created man in his own image, in the image of God he created him; male and female he created them. 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, you will not eat of it: for in the day that you eat of it you will surely die. ROM 2:14 For when the Gentiles, who do not have the law, do by nature the things contained in the law, these, not having the law, are a law to themselves: 15 Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;) 10:5 For Moses describes the righteousness which is of the law, That the man which does those things will live by them. ROM 5:12 Which is why, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned: 19 For just as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one will many be made righteous. GAL 3:10 For as many as are of the works of the law are under the curse: for it is written, Cursed is every one that continues not in all things which are written in the book of the law to do them. 12 And the law is not of faith: but, The man that does them will live in them. ECC 7:29 behold, only this have I found, that God has made man upright; but they have sought out many inventions. JOB 28:28 And to man he said, Behold, the fear of the Lord, that is wisdom; and to depart from evil is understanding.

<sup>368</sup> JAM 1:25 But whoso looks into the perfect law of liberty, and continues in it, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man will be blessed in his deed. 2:8 If you fulfill the royal law according to the scripture, You will love your neighbor as yourself, you do well: 10 For whoever will keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. 11 For the one who said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if you commit no adultery, yet if you kill, you are become a transgressor of the law. 12 So speak you, and so do, as those who will be judged by the law of liberty. ROM 13:8 Owe no man anything, but to love one another: for one who loves another has fulfilled the law. 9 For this, You will not commit adultery, You will not kill, You will not steal, You will not bear false witness, You will not covet; and if there be any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, You will love your neighbor as yourself. DEU 5:32 you will observe to do therefore as the Lord your God has commanded you: you will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left. 10:4 And he wrote on the tables, according to the first writing, the ten commandments, which



3. Besides this law, commonly called moral, God was pleased to give to the people of Israel, as a church under age, ceremonial laws, containing several typical ordinances, partly of worship, prefiguring Christ, His graces, actions, sufferings, and benefits;<sup>370</sup> and partly, holding forth diverse instructions of moral duties.<sup>371</sup> All which ceremonial laws are now abrogated, under the New Testament.<sup>372</sup>

4. To them also, as a body politic, He gave various judicial laws, which expired together with the State of that people; not obliging under any now, further than the general equity thereof may require.<sup>373</sup>

5. The moral law does forever bind all, as well justified persons as others, to the obedience thereof;<sup>374</sup> and that, not only in regard of the matter contained in it, but also in respect of the authority of God the Creator, who gave it.<sup>375</sup> Neither does Christ, in the Gospel, any way dissolve, but much strengthen this obligation.<sup>376</sup>

6. Although true believers are not under the law, as a covenant of works, to be thereby justified, or condemned;<sup>377</sup> yet is it of great use to them, as well as to others; in that, as a rule of life informing them of the will of God, and their

---

the Lord spoke to you in the mount out of the midst of the fire in the day of the assembly: and the Lord gave them to me. EXO 24:1 And he said to Moses, Come up to the Lord, you, and Aaron, Nadab, and Abihu, and seventy of the elders of Israel; and worship you afar off.

<sup>369</sup> MAT 22:37 Jesus said to him, You will love the Lord your God with all your heart, and with all your soul, and with all your mind. 38 This is the first and great commandment. 39 And the second is like to it, You will love your neighbor as yourself. 40 On these two commandments hang all the law and the prophets.

<sup>370</sup> (HEB 9) HEB 10:1 For the law having a shadow of good things to come, and not the very image of the things, can never with those sacrifices which they offered year by year continually make the comers thereto perfect. GAL 4:1 Now I say, That the heir, as long as he is a child, differs nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; 2 But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father. 3 Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world. COL 2:17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ.

<sup>371</sup> ICO 5:7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us. 2CO 6:17 Therefore come out from among them, and be separate, says the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you, JUD 23 And others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

<sup>372</sup> COL 2:14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross. 16 Let no man therefore judge you in meat, or in drink, or in respect of a holyday, or of the new moon, or of the Sabbath days: 17 Which are a shadow of things to come; but the body is of Christ. DAN 9:27 And he will confirm the covenant with many for one week: and in the middle of the week he will cause the sacrifice and the oblation to cease, and for the overspreading of abominations he will make it desolate, even until the consummation, and that determined will be poured upon the desolate. EPH 2:15 Having abolished in his flesh the enmity, even the law of commandments contained in ordinances; for to make in himself one new man of two, so making peace; 16 And that he might reconcile both to God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby.

<sup>373</sup> (EXO 21-22) GEN 49:10 The scepter will not depart from Judah, nor a lawgiver from between his feet, until Shiloh come; and to him will the gathering of the people be. 1PE 2:13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it is to the king, as supreme; 14 Or to governors, as to those who are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of those who do well. MAT 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. 38 you have heard that it has been said, An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth: 39 But I say to you, That you resist not evil: but whoever will strike you on your right cheek, turn to him the other also. ICO 9:8 Say I these things as a man? or says not the law the same also? 9 For it is written in the law of Moses, You will not muzzle the mouth of the ox that treads out the corn. Does God take care for oxen? 10 Or does he say it entirely for our sakes? For our sakes, no doubt, this is written: that the one who plows should plow in hope; and that the one who threshes in hope should be partaker of his hope.

<sup>374</sup> ROM 13:8 Owe no man anything, but to love one another: for one who loves another has fulfilled the law. 9 For this, You will not commit adultery, You will not kill, You will not steal, You will not bear false witness, You will not covet; and if there be any other commandment, it is briefly comprehended in this saying, namely, You will love your neighbor as yourself. 10 Love works no ill to his neighbor: therefore love is the fulfilling of the law. EPH 6:2 Honor your father and mother; (which is the first commandment with promise;) 1JO 2:3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments. 4 One who says, I know him, and keeps not his commandments, is a liar, and the truth is not in him. 7 Brethren, I write no new commandment to you, but an old commandment which you had from the beginning. The old commandment is the word which you have heard from the beginning. 8 Again, a new commandment I write to you, which thing is true in him and in you: because the darkness is past, and the true light now shines.

<sup>375</sup> JAM 2:10 For whoever will keep the whole law, and yet offend in one point, he is guilty of all. 11 For the one who said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if you commit no adultery, yet if you kill, you are become a transgressor of the law.

<sup>376</sup> MAT 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. 18 For truly I say to you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle will in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled. 19 Whoever therefore will break one of these least commandments, and will teach men so, he will be called the least in the kingdom of heaven: but whoever will do and teach them, the same will be called great in the kingdom of heaven. JAM 2:8 If you fulfill the royal law according to the scripture, You will love your neighbor as yourself, you do well. ROM 3:31 Do we then make void the law through faith? God forbid: yes, we establish the law.

duty, it directs and binds them to walk accordingly,<sup>378</sup> discovering also the sinful pollutions of their nature, hearts and lives,<sup>379</sup> so as, examining themselves thereby, they may come to further conviction of, humiliation for, and hatred against sin,<sup>380</sup> together with a clearer sight of the need they have of Christ, and the perfection of His obedience.<sup>381</sup> It is likewise of use to the regenerate, to restrain their corruptions, in that it forbids sin:<sup>382</sup> and the threatenings of it serve to show what even their sins deserve; and what afflictions, in this life, they may expect for them, although freed from the curse thereof threatened in the law.<sup>383</sup> The promises of it, in like manner, show them God's approbation of obedience, and what blessings they may expect upon the performance thereof:<sup>384</sup> although not as due to them by the law as a covenant of works.<sup>385</sup> So as, a man's doing good, and refraining from evil, because the

---

<sup>377</sup> ROM 6:14 For sin will not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace. GAL 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law will no flesh be justified. 3:13 Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangs on a tree. 4:4 But when the fullness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law, 5 To redeem those who were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons. ACT 13:39 And by him all who believe are justified from all things, from which you could not be justified by the law of Moses. ROM 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

<sup>378</sup> ROM 7:12 Which is why the law is holy, and the commandment is holy, and just, and good. 22 For I delight in the law of God after the inward man. 25 I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin. PSA 119:4 you have commanded us to keep your precepts diligently. 5 O that my ways were directed to keep your statutes! 6 Then will I not be ashamed, when I have respect to all your commandments. 1CO 7:19 Circumcision is nothing, and uncircumcision is nothing, but the keeping of the commandments of God. GAL 5:14 For all the law is fulfilled in one word, even in this; You will love your neighbor as yourself. 16 This I say then, Walk in the Spirit, and you will not fulfill the lust of the flesh. 18 But if you be led of the Spirit, you are not under the law. 19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness, 20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies, 21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that they which do such things will not inherit the kingdom of God. 22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith, 23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

<sup>379</sup> ROM 7:7 What will we say then? Is the law sin? God forbid. No, I had not known sin, but by the law: for I had not known lust, except the law had said, You will not covet. ROM 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there will no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

<sup>380</sup> JAM 1:23 For if any be a hearer of the word, and not a doer, he is like to a man beholding his natural face in a glass: 24 For he beholds himself, and goes his way, and straightway forgets what manner of man he was. 25 But whoso looks into the perfect law of liberty, and continues in it, he being not a forgetful hearer, but a doer of the work, this man will be blessed in his deed. ROM 7:9 For I was alive without the law once: but when the commandment came, sin revived, and I died. 14 For we know that the law is spiritual: but I am carnal, sold under sin. 24 O wretched man that I am! who will deliver me from the body of this death?

<sup>381</sup> GAL 3:24 Which is why the law was our schoolmaster to bring us to Christ, that we might be justified by faith. ROM 7:24 O wretched man that I am! who will deliver me from the body of this death? 25 I thank God through Jesus Christ our Lord. So then with the mind I myself serve the law of God; but with the flesh the law of sin. 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh: ROM 8:4 That the righteousness of the law might be fulfilled in us, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

<sup>382</sup> JAM 2:11 For the one who said, Do not commit adultery, said also, Do not kill. Now if you commit no adultery, yet if you kill, you are become a transgressor of the law. PSA 119:101 I have refrained my feet from every evil way, that I might keep your word. 104 Through your precepts I get understanding: therefore I hate every false way. 128 Therefore I esteem all your precepts concerning all things to be right; and I hate every false way.

<sup>383</sup> EZR 9:13 And after all that has come upon us for our evil deeds, and for our great trespass, seeing that you our God have punished us less than our iniquities deserve, and have given us such deliverance as this; 14 Should we again break your commandments, and join in affinity with the people of these abominations? would you not be angry with us till you had consumed us, so that there should be no remnant nor escaping? PSA 89:30 If his children forsake my law, and walk not in my judgments; 31 If they break my statutes, and keep not my commandments; 32 Then will I visit their transgression with the rod, and their iniquity with stripes. 33 Nevertheless my lovingkindness will I not utterly take from him, nor suffer my faithfulness to fail. 34 My covenant will I not break, nor alter the thing that is gone out of my lips.

<sup>384</sup> (LEV 26) 2CO 6:16 And what agreement has the temple of God with idols? for you are the temple of the living God; as God has said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they will be my people. EPH 6:2 Honor your father and mother; (which is the first commandment with promise;) 3 That it may be well with you, and you may live long on the earth. PSA 37:11 But the meek will inherit the earth; and will delight themselves in the abundance of peace. MAT 5:5 Blessed are the meek: for they will inherit the earth. PSA 19:11 Moreover by them is your servant warned: and in keeping of them there is great reward.

<sup>385</sup> GAL 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law will no flesh be justified. LUK 17:10 So likewise you, when you will have done all those things which are commanded you, say, We are unprofitable servants: we have done what was our duty to do.

law encourages to the one and deters from the other, is no evidence of his being under the law: and not under grace.<sup>386</sup>

7. Neither are the forementioned uses of the law contrary to the grace of the Gospel, but do sweetly comply with it,<sup>387</sup> the Spirit of Christ subduing and enabling the will of man to do that freely, and cheerfully, which the will of God, revealed in the law, requires to be done.<sup>388</sup>

---

## Chapter 20 - Of Christian Liberty, and Liberty of Conscience

1. The liberty which Christ has purchased for believers under the Gospel consists in their freedom from the guilt of sin, and condemning wrath of God, the curse of the moral law;<sup>389</sup> and, in their being delivered from this present evil world, bondage to Satan, and dominion of sin;<sup>390</sup> from the evil of afflictions, the sting of death, the victory of the grave, and everlasting damnation;<sup>391</sup> as also, in their free access to God,<sup>392</sup> and their yielding obedience to Him, not out of slavish fear, but a child-like love and willing mind.<sup>393</sup> All which were common also to believers under the law.<sup>394</sup> But, under the New Testament, the liberty of Christians is further enlarged, in their freedom from the yoke of

---

<sup>386</sup> ROM 6:12 Let not sin therefore reign in your mortal body, that you should obey it in the lusts of it. 14 For sin will not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace. 1PE 3:8 Finally, be all of one mind, having compassion one of another, love as brethren, be pitiful, be courteous: 9 Not rendering evil for evil, or railing for railing: but contrariwise blessing; knowing that you are thereto called, that you should inherit a blessing. 10 For one who ill love life, and see good days, let him refrain his tongue from evil, and his lips that they speak no guile: 11 Let him eschew evil, and do good; let him seek peace, and ensue it. 12 For the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous, and his ears are open to their prayers: but the face of the Lord is against those who do evil. PSA 34:12 What man is he that desires life, and loves many days, that he may see good? 13 Keep your tongue from evil, and your lips from speaking guile. 14 Depart from evil, and do good; seek peace, and pursue it. 15 The eyes of the Lord are upon the righteous, and his ears are open to their cry. 16 The face of the Lord is against those who do evil, to cut off the remembrance of them from the earth. HEB 12:28 Which is why we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear. 29 For our God is a consuming fire.

<sup>387</sup> GAL 3:21 Is the law then against the promises of God? God forbid: for if there had been a law given which could have given life, truly righteousness should have been by the law.

<sup>388</sup> EZE 36:27 And I will put my spirit within you, and cause you to walk in my statutes, and you will keep my judgments, and do them. HEB 8:10 For this is the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel after those days, says the Lord; I will put my laws into their mind, and write them in their hearts: and I will be to them a God, and they will be to me a people. JER 31:33 But this will be the covenant that I will make with the house of Israel; After those days, says the Lord, I will put my law in their inward parts, and write it in their hearts; and will be their God, and they will be my people.

<sup>389</sup> TIT 2:14 Who gave himself for us, that he might redeem us from all iniquity, and purify to himself a peculiar people, zealous of good works. 1TH 1:10 And to wait for his Son from heaven, whom he raised from the dead, even Jesus, which delivered us from the wrath to come. GAL 3:13 Christ has redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangs on a tree.

<sup>390</sup> GAL 1:4 Who gave himself for our sins, that he might deliver us from this present evil world, according to the will of God and our Father. COL 1:13 Who has delivered us from the power of darkness, and has translated us into the kingdom of his dear Son. ACT 26:18 To open their eyes, and to turn them from darkness to light, and from the power of Satan to God, that they may receive forgiveness of sins, and inheritance among those who are sanctified by faith that is in me. ROM 6:14 For sin will not have dominion over you: for you are not under the law, but under grace.

<sup>391</sup> ROM 8:28 And we know that all things work together for good to those who love God, to those who are the called according to his purpose. PSA 119:71 It is good for me that I have been afflicted; that I might learn your statutes. 1CO 15:54 So when this corruptible will have put on incorruption, and this mortal will have put on immortality, then will be brought to pass the saying that is written, Death is swallowed up in victory. 55 O death, where is your sting? O grave, where is your victory? 56 The sting of death is sin; and the strength of sin is the law. 57 But thanks be to God, which gives us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ. ROM 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to those who are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

<sup>392</sup> ROM 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ: 2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace in which we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

<sup>393</sup> ROM 8:14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God. 15 For you have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but you have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father. 1JO 4:18 There is no fear in love; but perfect love casts out fear: because fear has torment. One who fears is not made perfect in love.

<sup>394</sup> GAL 3:9 So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham. 14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith.

the ceremonial law, to which the Jewish Church was subjected;<sup>395</sup> and in greater boldness of access to the throne of grace,<sup>396</sup> and in fuller communications of the free Spirit of God, than believers under the law did ordinarily partake of.<sup>397</sup>

2. God alone is Lord of the conscience,<sup>398</sup> and has left it free from the doctrines and commandments of men, which are, in anything, contrary to His Word; or beside it, in matters of faith, or worship.<sup>399</sup> So that, to believe such doctrines, or to obey such commands, out of conscience, is to betray true liberty of conscience:<sup>400</sup> and the requiring of an implicit faith, and an absolute and blind obedience, is to destroy liberty of conscience, and reason also.<sup>401</sup>

3. They who, upon pretence of Christian liberty, do practice any sin, or cherish any lust, do thereby destroy the end of Christian liberty, which is, that being delivered out of the hands of our enemies, we might serve the Lord without fear, in holiness and righteousness before Him, all the days of our life.<sup>402</sup>

---

<sup>395</sup> GAL 4:1 Now I say, That the heir, as long as he is a child, differs nothing from a servant, though he be lord of all; 2 But is under tutors and governors until the time appointed of the father. 3 Even so we, when we were children, were in bondage under the elements of the world. 6 And because you are sons, God has sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father. 7 Which is why you are no more a servant, but a son; and if a son, then an heir of God through Christ. 5:1 Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ has made us free, and do not be entangled again with the yoke of bondage. ACT 15:10 Now therefore why tempt you God, to put a yoke upon the neck of the disciples, which neither our fathers nor we were able to bear? 11 But we believe that through the grace of the Lord Jesus Christ we will be saved, even as they.

<sup>396</sup> HEB 4:14 Seeing then that we have a great high priest, that is passed into the heavens, Jesus the Son of God, let us hold fast our profession. 16 Let us therefore come boldly to the throne of grace, that we may obtain mercy, and find grace to help in time of need. 10:19 Having therefore, brethren, boldness to enter into the holiest by the blood of Jesus, 20 By a new and living way, which he has consecrated for us, through the veil, that is to say, his flesh; 21 And having a high priest over the house of God; 22 Let us draw near with a true heart in full assurance of faith, having our hearts sprinkled from an evil conscience, and our bodies washed with pure water.

<sup>397</sup> JOH 7:38 One who believes on me, as the scripture has said, out of his belly will flow rivers of living water. 39 (But this spoke he of the Spirit, which those who believe on him should receive: for the Holy Spirit was not yet given; because that Jesus was not yet glorified.) 2CO 3:13 And not as Moses, which put a veil over his face, that the children of Israel could not steadfastly look to the end of what is abolished. 17 Now the Lord is that Spirit: and where the Spirit of the Lord is, there is liberty. 18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

<sup>398</sup> JAM 4:12 There is one lawgiver, who is able to save and to destroy: who are you that judges another? ROM 14:4 Who are you that judges another man's servant? to his own master he stands or falls. Yes, he will be held up: for God is able to make him stand.

<sup>399</sup> ACT 4:19 But Peter and John answered and said to them, Whether it is right in the sight of God to hearken to you more than to God, judge ye. 5:29 Then Peter and the other apostles answered and said, We ought to obey God rather than men. 1CO 7:23 you are bought with a price; do not be the servants of men. MAT 23:8 But do not be called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all you are brethren. 9 And call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven. 10 Nor be called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ. 2CO 1:24 Not for that we have dominion over your faith, but are helpers of your joy: for by faith you stand. MAT 15:9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.

<sup>400</sup> COL 2:20 Which is why if you be dead with Christ from the rudiments of the world, why, as though living in the world, are you subject to ordinances, 22 Which all are to perish with the using;) after the commandments and doctrines of men? 23 Which things have indeed a show of wisdom in will worship, and humility, and neglecting of the body; not in any honor to the satisfying of the flesh. GAL 1:10 For do I now persuade men, or God? or do I seek to please men? for if I yet pleased men, I should not be the servant of Christ. 2:4 And that because of false brethren unawares brought in, who came in privily to spy out our liberty which we have in Christ Jesus, that they might bring us into bondage: 5 To whom we gave place by subjection, no, not for an hour; that the truth of the gospel might continue with you. 5:1 Stand fast therefore in the liberty wherewith Christ has made us free, and do not be entangled again with the yoke of bondage.

<sup>401</sup> ROM 10:17 So then faith comes by hearing, and hearing by the word of God. 14:23 And one who doubts is damned if he eat, because he eats not of faith: for whatever is not of faith is sin. ISA 8:20 To the law and to the testimony: if they speak not according to this word, it is because there is no light in them. ACT 17:11 These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so. JOH 4:22 you worship you know not what: we know what we worship: for salvation is of the Jews. HOS 5:11 Ephraim is oppressed and broken in judgment, because he willingly walked after the commandment. REV 13:12 And he exercises all the power of the first beast before him, and causes the earth and those who dwell in it to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed. 16 And he causes all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: 17 And that no man might buy or sell, save the one who had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name. JER 8:9 The wise men are ashamed, they are dismayed and taken: behold, they have rejected the word of the Lord; and what wisdom is in them?

<sup>402</sup> GAL 5:13 For, brethren, you have been called to liberty; only use not liberty for an occasion to the flesh, but by love serve one another. 1PE 2:16 As free, and not using your liberty for a cloak of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. 2PE 2:19 While they promise them liberty, they themselves are the servants of corruption: for of whom a man is overcome, of the same is he brought in bondage. JOH 8:34 Jesus answered them, Truly, truly, I say to you, Whoever commits sin is the servant of sin. LUK 1:74 That he would grant to us, that we being delivered out of the hand of our enemies might serve him without fear, 75 In holiness and righteousness before him, all the days of our life.

4. And because the powers which God has ordained, and the liberty which Christ has purchased are not intended by God to destroy, but mutually to uphold and preserve one another, they who, upon pretence of Christian liberty, shall oppose any lawful power, or the lawful exercise of it, whether it is civil or ecclesiastical, resist the ordinance of God.<sup>403</sup> And, for their publishing of such opinions, or maintaining of such practices, as are contrary to the light of nature, or to the known principles of Christianity (whether concerning faith, worship, or conversation), or to the power of godliness; or, such erroneous opinions or practices, as either in their own nature, or in the manner of publishing or maintaining them, are destructive to the external peace and order which Christ has established in the Church, they may lawfully be called to account,<sup>404</sup> and proceeded against, by the censures of the Church, and by the power of the civil magistrate.<sup>405</sup>

---

<sup>403</sup> MAT 12:25 And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said to them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to desolation; and every city or house divided against itself will not stand. 1PE 2:13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it is to the king, as supreme; 14 Or to governors, as to those who are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of those who do well. 16 As free, and not using your liberty for a cloak of maliciousness, but as the servants of God. ROM 13:1 Let every soul be subject to the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 2 Whoever therefore resists the power, resists the ordinance of God: and those who resist will receive to themselves damnation. 3 For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Will you then not be afraid of the power? do what is good, and you will have praise of the same: 4 For he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he bears not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that does evil. 5 Which is why you must be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake. 6 For this cause pay you tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. 7 Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honor to whom honor. 8 Owe no man anything, but to love one another: for one who loves another has fulfilled the law. HEB 13:17 Obey those who have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as those who must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you.

<sup>404</sup> ROM 1:32 Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in those who do them. 1CO 5:1 It is reported commonly that there is fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. 5 To deliver such an one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus. 11 But now I have written to you not to keep company, if any man that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such an one no not to eat. 13 But those who are without God judges. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person. 2JO 1:10 If there come any to you, and do not bring this doctrine, receive him not into your house, nor bid him God speed: 11 For one who bids him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds. 2TH 3:14 And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. 1TI 6:3 If any man teach otherwise, and consent not to wholesome words, even the words of our Lord Jesus Christ, and to the doctrine which is according to godliness; 4 He is proud, knowing nothing, but doting about questions and strifes of words, whereof comes envy, strife, railings, evil surmisings, 5 Perverse disputings of men of corrupt minds, and destitute of the truth, supposing that gain is godliness: from such withdraw yourself. TIT 1:10 For there are many unruly and vain talkers and deceivers, specially they of the circumcision: 11 Whose mouths must be stopped, who subvert whole houses, teaching things which they ought not, for filthy lucre's sake. 13 This witness is true. Which is why rebuke them sharply, that they may be sound in the faith. TIT 3:10 A man that is a heretic after the first and second admonition reject. MAT 18:15 Moreover if your brother will trespass against you, go and tell him his fault between you and him alone: if he will hear you, you have gained your brother. 16 But if he will not hear you, then take with you one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established. 17 And if he will neglect to hear them, tell it to the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be to you as a heathen man and a publican. 1TI 1:19 Holding faith, and a good conscience; which some having put away concerning faith have made shipwreck: 20 Of whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered to Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme. REV 2:2 I know your works, and your labor, and your patience, and how you can not bear those who are evil: and you have tried those who say they are apostles, and are not, and have found them liars. 14 But I have a few things against you, because you have there those who hold the doctrine of Balaam, who taught Balac to cast a stumbling block before the children of Israel, to eat things sacrificed to idols, and to commit fornication. 15 So have you also those who hold the doctrine of the Nicolaitans, which thing I hate. 20 Notwithstanding I have a few things against you, because you suffers that woman Jezebel, which calls herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed to idols. 3:9 Behold, I will make them of the synagogue of Satan, which say they are Jews, and are not, but do lie; behold, I will make them to come and worship before your feet, and to know that I have loved you.

<sup>405</sup> DEU 13:6 If your brother, the son of your mother, or your son, or your daughter, or the wife of your heart, or your friend, which is as your own soul, entice you secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which you have not known, you, nor your fathers; 7 Namely, of the gods of the people which are round about you, near to you, or far off from you, from the one end of the earth even to the other end of the earth; 8 You will not consent to him, nor hearken to him; nor will your eye pity him, nor will you spare, nor will you conceal him: 9 But you will surely kill him; your hand will be first upon him to put him to death, and afterwards the hand of all the people. 10 And you will stone him with stones, that he die; because he has sought to thrust you away from the Lord your God, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of bondage. 11 And all Israel will hear, and fear, and will do no more any such wickedness as this is among you. ROM 13:3 For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Will you then not be afraid of the power? do what is good, and you will have praise of the same: 4 For he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he bears not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that does evil. 2JO 1:10 If there come any to you, and do not bring this doctrine, receive him not into your house, nor bid him God speed: 11 For one who bids him God speed is partaker of his evil deeds. EZR 7:23 Whatever is commanded by the God of heaven, let it be diligently done for the house of the God

---

## Chapter 21 - Of Religious Worship, and the Sabbath Day

1. The light of nature shows that there is a God, who has lordship and sovereignty over all, is good, and does good to all, and is therefore to be feared, loved, praised, called upon, trusted in, and served, with all the heart, and with all the soul, and with all the might.<sup>406</sup> But the acceptable way of worshipping the true God is instituted by Himself, and so limited by His own revealed will, that He may not be worshipped according to the imaginations and devices of

---

of heaven: for why should there be wrath against the realm of the king and his sons? 25 And you, Ezra, after the wisdom of your God, that is in your hand, set magistrates and judges, which may judge all the people that are beyond the river, all such as know the laws of your God; and teach you those who know them not. 26 And whoever will not do the law of your God, and the law of the king, let judgment be executed speedily upon him, whether it is to death, or to banishment, or to confiscation of goods, or to imprisonment. 27 Blessed be the Lord God of our fathers, which has put such a thing as this in the king's heart, to beautify the house of the Lord which is in Jerusalem: 28 And has extended mercy to me before the king, and his counsellors, and before all the king's mighty princes. And I was strengthened as the hand of the Lord my God was upon me, and I gathered together out of Israel chief men to go up with me. REV 17:12 And the ten horns which you saw are ten kings, which have received no kingdom as yet; but receive power as kings one hour with the beast. 16 And the ten horns which you saw upon the beast, these will hate the whore, and will make her desolate and naked, and will eat her flesh, and burn her with fire. 17 For God has put in their hearts to fulfill his will, and to agree, and give their kingdom to the beast, until the words of God will be fulfilled. NEH 13:15 In those days saw I in Judah some treading wine presses on the Sabbath, and bringing in sheaves, and lading asses; as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all manner of burdens, which they brought into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day: and I testified against them in the day in which they sold victuals. 17 Then I contended with the nobles of Judah, and said to them, What evil thing is this that you do, and profane the Sabbath day? 21 Then I testified against them, and said to them, Why lodge you about the wall? if you do so again, I will lay hands on you. From that time forth came they no more on the Sabbath. 22 And I commanded the Levites that they should cleanse themselves, and that they should come and keep the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. Remember me, O my God, concerning this also, and spare me according to the greatness of your mercy. 25 And I contended with them, and cursed them, and struck certain of them, and plucked off their hair, and made them swear by God, saying, you will not give your daughters to their sons, nor take their daughters to your sons, or for yourselves. 30 Thus cleansed I them from all strangers, and appointed the wards of the priests and the Levites, every one in his business. 2KI 23:5 And he put down the idolatrous priests, whom the kings of Judah had ordained to burn incense in the high places in the cities of Judah, and in the places round about Jerusalem; them also that burned incense to Baal, to the sun, and to the moon, and to the planets, and to all the host of heaven. 6 And he brought out the grove from the house of the Lord, without Jerusalem, to the brook Kidron, and burned it at the brook Kidron, and stamped it small to powder, and cast the powder of it upon the graves of the children of the people. 9 Nevertheless the priests of the high places came not up to the altar of the Lord in Jerusalem, but they ate of the unleavened bread among their brethren. 20 And he slew all the priests of the high places that were there upon the altars, and burned men's bones upon them, and returned to Jerusalem. 21 And the king commanded all the people, saying, Keep the Passover to the Lord your God, as it is written in the book of this covenant. 2CH 34:33 And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that pertained to the children of Israel, and made all who were present in Israel to serve, even to serve the Lord their God. And all his days they departed not from following the Lord, the God of their fathers. 2CH 15:12 And they entered into a covenant to seek the Lord God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul; 13 That whoever would not seek the Lord God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman. 16 And it came to pass, as he talked with him, that the king said to him, Are you made of the king's counsel? forbear; why should you be struck? Then the prophet forbore, and said, I know that God has determined to destroy you, because you have done this, and have not hearkened to my counsel. DAN 3:29 Therefore I make a decree, That every people, nation, and language, which speak anything amiss against the God of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, will be cut in pieces, and their houses will be made a dunghill: because there is no other God that can deliver after this sort. 1TI 2:2 For kings, and for all who are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. ISA 49:23 And kings will be your nursing fathers, and their queens your nursing mothers: they will bow down to you with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet; and you will know that I am the Lord: for they will not be ashamed that wait for me. ZEC 13:2 And it will come to pass in that day, says the Lord of hosts, that I will cut off the names of the idols out of the land, and they will no more be remembered: and also I will cause the prophets and the unclean spirit to pass out of the land. 3 And it will come to pass, that when any will yet prophesy, then his father and his mother that bore him will say to him, You will not live; for you speak lies in the name of the Lord: and his father and his mother that bore him will thrust him through when he prophesies.

<sup>406</sup> ROM 1:20 For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse. ACT 17:24 God that made the world and all things in it, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in temples made with hands. PSA 119:68 You are good, and do good; teach me your statutes. JER 10:7 Who would not fear you, O King of nations? for to you does it appertain: forasmuch as among all the wise men of the nations, and in all their kingdoms, there is none like to you. PSA 31:23 O love the Lord, all you his saints: for the Lord preserves the faithful, and plentifully rewards the proud doer. PSA 18:3 I will call upon the Lord, who is worthy to be praised: so will I be saved from my enemies. ROM 10:12 For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich to all who call upon him. PSA 62:8 Trust in him at all times; you people, pour out your heart before him: God is a refuge for us. Selah. JOS 24:14 Now therefore fear the Lord, and serve him in sincerity and in truth: and put away the gods which your fathers served on the other side of the flood, and in Egypt; and serve you the Lord. MAR 12:33 And to love him with all the heart, and with all the understanding, and with all the soul, and with all the strength, and to love his neighbor as himself, is more than all whole burnt offerings and sacrifices.

men, or the suggestions of Satan, under any visible representation, or any other way not prescribed in the holy Scripture.<sup>407</sup>

2. Religious worship is to be given to God, the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit; and to Him alone;<sup>408</sup> not to angels, saints, or any other creature:<sup>409</sup> and, since the fall, not without a Mediator; nor in the mediation of any other but of Christ alone.<sup>410</sup>

3. Prayer, with thanksgiving, being one special part of religious worship,<sup>411</sup> is by God required of all men:<sup>412</sup> and, that it may be accepted, it is to be made in the name of the Son,<sup>413</sup> by the help of His Spirit,<sup>414</sup> according to His

---

<sup>407</sup> DEU 12:32 Whatever I command you, observe to do it: you will not add thereto, nor diminish from it. MAT 15:9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men. ACT 17:25 Nor is he worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed anything, seeing he gives life to all, and breath, and all things. MAT 4:9 And says to him, All these things will I give you, if you will fall down and worship me. 10 Then Jesus says to him, Get away, Satan: for it is written, You will worship the Lord your God, and him only will you serve. (see also DEU 15:-19) EXO 20:4 You will not make to you any graven image, or any likeness of anything that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth: 5 You will not bow down yourself to them, nor serve them: for I the Lord your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate me; 6 And showing mercy to thousands of those who love me, and keep my commandments.

<sup>408</sup> MAT 4:10 Then Jesus says to him, Get away, Satan: for it is written, You will worship the Lord your God, and him only will you serve. JOH 5:23 That all men should honor the Son, even as they honor the Father. One who honors not the Son honors not the Father which has sent him. 2CO 13:14 The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Spirit, be with you all. Amen.

<sup>409</sup> COL 2:18 Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he has not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind. REV 19:10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said to me, See you do it not: I am your fellow servant, and of your brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy. ROM 1:25 Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed forever. Amen.

<sup>410</sup> JOH 14:6 Jesus says to him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man comes to the Father, but by me. 1TI 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus. EPH 2:18 For through him we both have access by one Spirit to the Father. COL 3:17 And whatever you do in word or deed, do all in the name of the Lord Jesus, giving thanks to God and the Father by him.

<sup>411</sup> PHI 4:6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with thanksgiving let your requests be made known to God.

<sup>412</sup> PSA 65:6 Which by his strength sets fast the mountains; being wrapped with power.

<sup>413</sup> JOH 14:13 And whatever you will ask in my name, that will I do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. 14 If you will ask anything in my name, I will do it. 1PE 2:5 you also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, a holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

<sup>414</sup> ROM 8:26 Likewise the Spirit also helps our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself makes intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.

will,<sup>415</sup> with understanding, reverence, humility, fervency, faith, love and perseverance,<sup>416</sup> and, if vocal, in a known tongue.<sup>417</sup>

4. Prayer is to be made for things lawful;<sup>418</sup> and for all sorts of men living, or that shall live hereafter:<sup>419</sup> but not for the dead,<sup>420</sup> nor for those of whom it may be known that they have sinned the sin to death.<sup>421</sup>

5. The reading of the Scriptures with godly fear,<sup>422</sup> the sound preaching<sup>423</sup> and conscionable hearing of the Word, in obedience to God, with understanding, faith and reverence,<sup>424</sup> singing of psalms with grace in the heart;<sup>425</sup> as also,

---

<sup>415</sup> IJO 5:14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.

<sup>416</sup> PSA 47:7 For God is the King of all the earth: sing you praises with understanding. ECC 5:1 Keep your foot when you go to the house of God, and be more ready to hear, than to give the sacrifice of fools: for they consider not that they do evil. 2 Do not be rash with your mouth, and let not your heart be hasty to utter anything before God: for God is in heaven, and you upon earth: therefore let your words be few. HEB 12:28 Which is why we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear: GEN 17:27 And all the men of his house, born in the house, and bought with money of the stranger, were circumcised with him. JAM 5:16 Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that you may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man avails much. JAM 1:6 But let him ask in faith, nothing wavering. For one who wavers is like a wave of the sea driven with the wind and tossed. 7 For let not that man think that he will receive anything of the Lord. MAR 11:24 Therefore I say to you, Whatever you desire, when you pray, believe that you receive them, and you will have them. MAT 6:12 And forgive us our debts, as we forgive our debtors. 14 For if you forgive men their trespasses, your heavenly Father will also forgive you: 15 But if you forgive not men their trespasses, nor will your Father forgive your trespasses. COL 4:2 Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving; EPH 6:18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

<sup>417</sup> ICO 14:14 For if I pray in an unknown tongue, my spirit prays, but my understanding is unfruitful.

<sup>418</sup> IJO 5:14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask anything according to his will, he hears us.

<sup>419</sup> 1TI 2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men; 2 For kings, and for all who are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. JOH 17:20 Nor do I pray for these alone, but for them also which will believe on me through their word. 2SA 7:29 Therefore now let it please you to bless the house of your servant, that it may continue forever before you: for you, O Lord God, have spoken it: and with your blessing let the house of your servant be blessed forever. RUT 4:12 And let your house be like the house of Pharez, whom Tamar bore to Judah, of the seed which the Lord will give you of this young woman.

<sup>420</sup> 2SA 12:21 Then said his servants to him, What thing is this that you have done? you did fast and weep for the child, while it was alive; but when the child was dead, you did rise and eat bread. 22 And he said, While the child was yet alive, I fasted and wept: for I said, Who can tell whether God will be gracious to me, that the child may live? 23 But now he is dead, why should I fast? can I bring him back again? I will go to him, but he will not return to me. LUK 16:25 But Abraham said, Son, remember that you in your lifetime received your good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and you are tormented. 26 And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; nor can they pass to us, that would come from there. REV 14:13 And I heard a voice from heaven saying to me, Write, Blessed are the dead which die in the Lord from henceforth: Yes, says the Spirit, that they may rest from their labors; and their works do follow them.

<sup>421</sup> IJO 5:16 If any man see his brother sin a sin which is not to death, he will ask, and he will give him life for those who sin not to death. There is a sin to death: I do not say that he will pray for it.

<sup>422</sup> ACT 15:21 For Moses of olden times has in every city those who preach him, being read in the synagogues every Sabbath day. REV 1:3 Blessed is the one who reads, and those who hear the words of this prophecy, and keep those things which are written in it: for the time is at hand.

<sup>423</sup> 2TI 4:2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.

<sup>424</sup> JAM 1:22 But be doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves. ACT 10:33 Immediately therefore I sent to you; and you have well done that you are come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded you of God. MAT 13:19 When any one hears the word of the kingdom, and understands it not, then comes the wicked one, and catches away what was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side. HEB 4:2 For to us was the gospel preached, as well as to them: but the word preached did not profit them, not being mixed with faith in those who heard it. ISA 66:2 For all those things has my hand made, and those things have been, says the Lord: but to this man will I look, even to him that is poor and of a contrite spirit, and trembles at my word.

<sup>425</sup> COL 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord. EPH 5:19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs,



the due administration and worthy receiving of the sacraments instituted by Christ, are all parts of the ordinary religious worship of God:<sup>426</sup> beside religious oaths,<sup>427</sup> vows,<sup>428</sup> solemn fastings,<sup>429</sup> and thanksgivings upon special occasions,<sup>430</sup> which are, in their several times and seasons, to be used in a holy and religious manner.<sup>431</sup>

6. Neither prayer, nor any other part of religious worship, is now, under the Gospel, either tied to, or made more acceptable by any place in which it is performed, or towards which it is directed:<sup>432</sup> but God is to be worshipped everywhere,<sup>433</sup> in spirit and truth;<sup>434</sup> as, in private families<sup>435</sup> daily,<sup>436</sup> and in secret, each one by himself;<sup>437</sup> so, more

---

singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord. JAM 5:13 Is any among you afflicted? let him pray. Is any merry? let him sing psalms.

<sup>426</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 1CO 11:23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: 24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. 25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. 27 Which is why whoever will eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. ACT 2:42 And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.

<sup>427</sup> DEU 6:13 You will fear the Lord your God, and serve him, and will swear by his name. NEH 10:29 They clave to their brethren, their nobles, and entered into a curse, and into an oath, to walk in God's law, which was given by Moses the servant of God, and to observe and do all the commandments of the Lord our Lord, and his judgments and his statutes.

<sup>428</sup> ISA 19:21 And the Lord will be known to Egypt, and the Egyptians will know the Lord in that day, and will do sacrifice and oblation; yes, they will vow a vow to the Lord, and perform it. ECC 5:4 When you vow a vow to God, defer not to pay it; for he has no pleasure in fools: pay what you have vowed. 5 Better is it that you should not vow, than that you should vow and not pay.

<sup>429</sup> JOE 2:12 Therefore also now, says the Lord, turn you even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning. EST 4:16 Go, gather together all the Jews that are present in Shushan, and fast you for me, and neither eat nor drink three days, night or day: I also and my maidens will fast likewise; and so will I go in to the king, which is not according to the law: and if I perish, I perish. MAT 9:15 And Jesus said to them, Can the children of the bride chamber mourn, as long as the bridegroom is with them? but the days will come, when the bridegroom will be taken from them, and then will they fast. 1CO 7:5 Defraud you not one the other, except it is with consent for a time, that you may give yourselves to fasting and prayer; and come together again, that Satan tempt you not for your incontinency.

<sup>430</sup> (PSA 107 throughout) EST 9:22 As the days in which the Jews rested from their enemies, and the month which was turned to them from sorrow to joy, and from mourning into a good day: that they should make them days of feasting and joy, and of sending portions one to another, and gifts to the poor.

<sup>431</sup> HEB 12:28 Which is why we receiving a kingdom which cannot be moved, let us have grace, whereby we may serve God acceptably with reverence and godly fear.

<sup>432</sup> JOH 4:21 Jesus says to her, Woman, believe me, the hour comes, when you will neither in this mountain, nor yet at Jerusalem, worship the Father.

<sup>433</sup> MAL 1:11 For from the rising of the sun even to the going down of the same my name will be great among the Gentiles; and in every place incense will be offered to my name, and a pure offering: for my name will be great among the heathen, says the Lord of hosts. 1TI 2:8 I will therefore that men pray every where, lifting up holy hands, without wrath and doubting.

<sup>434</sup> JOH 4:23 But the hour comes, and now is, when the true worshippers will worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeks such to worship him. 24 God is a Spirit: and those who worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.

<sup>435</sup> JER 10:25 Pour out your fury upon the heathen that know you not, and upon the families that call not on your name: for they have eaten up Jacob, and devoured him, and consumed him, and have made his habitation desolate. DEU 6:6 And these words, which I command you this day, will be in your heart: 7 And you will teach them diligently to your children, and will talk of them when you sit in your house, and when you walk by the way, and when you lie down, and when you rise up. JOB 1:5 And it was so, when the days of their feasting were gone about, that Job sent and sanctified them, and rose up early in the morning, and offered burnt offerings according to the number of them all: for Job said, It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed God in their hearts. Thus did Job continually. 2SA 6:18 And as soon as David had made an end of offering burnt offerings and peace offerings, he blessed the people in the name of the Lord of hosts. 20 Then David returned to bless his household. And Michal the daughter of Saul came out to meet David, and said, How glorious was the king of Israel today, who uncovered himself today in the eyes of the handmaids of his servants, as one of the vain fellows shamelessly uncovers himself! 1PE 3:7 Likewise, you husbands, dwell with them according to knowledge, giving honor to the wife, as to the weaker vessel, and as being heirs together of the grace of life; that your prayers are not hindered. ACT 10:2 A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always.

<sup>436</sup> MAT 6:11 Give us this day our daily bread.

solemnly in the public assemblies, which are not carelessly or willfully to be neglected, or forsaken, when God, by His Word or providence, calls thereto.<sup>438</sup>

7. As it is the law of nature, that, in general, a due proportion of time be set apart for the worship of God; so, in His Word, by a positive, moral, and perpetual commandment binding all men in all ages, He has particularly appointed one day in seven, for a Sabbath, to be kept holy to him:<sup>439</sup> which, from the beginning of the world to the resurrection of Christ, was the last day of the week: and, from the resurrection of Christ, was changed into the first day of the week,<sup>440</sup> which, in Scripture, is called the Lord's Day,<sup>441</sup> and is to be continued to the end of the world, as the Christian Sabbath.<sup>442</sup>

8. This Sabbath is then kept holy to the Lord, when men, after a due preparing of their hearts, and ordering of their common affairs beforehand, do not only observe a holy rest, all the day, from their own works, words, and thoughts about their worldly employments and recreations,<sup>443</sup> but also are taken up, the whole time, in the public and private exercises of His worship, and in the duties of necessity and mercy.<sup>444</sup>

---

<sup>437</sup> MAT 6:6 But you, when you pray, enter into your closet, and when you have shut your door, pray to your Father which is in secret; and your Father which sees in secret will reward you openly. EPH 6:18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints.

<sup>438</sup> ISA 56:6 Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the Lord, to serve him, and to love the name of the Lord, to be his servants, every one that keeps the Sabbath from polluting it, and takes hold of my covenant; 7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices will be accepted upon my altar; for my house will be called a house of prayer for all people. HEB 10:25 Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as you see the day approaching. PRO 1:20 Wisdom cries without; she utters her voice in the streets: 21 She cries in the chief place of concourse, in the openings of the gates: in the city she utters her words, saying, 24 Because I have called, and you refused; I have stretched out my hand, and no man regarded. 8:34 Blessed is the man that hears me, watching daily at my gates, waiting at the posts of my doors. ACT 13:42 And when the Jews were gone out of the synagogue, the Gentiles besought that these words might be preached to them the next Sabbath. LUK 4:16 And he came to Nazareth, where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the Sabbath day, and stood up for to read. ACT 2:42 And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers.

<sup>439</sup> EXO 20:8 Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. 10 But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord your God: in it you will not do any work, you, nor your son, nor your daughter, your manservant, nor your maidservant, nor your cattle, nor your stranger that is within your gates: 11 For in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: which is why the Lord blessed the Sabbath day, and hallowed it. ISA 56:2 Blessed is the man that does this, and the son of man that lays hold on it; that keeps the Sabbath from polluting it, and keeps his hand from doing any evil. 4 For thus says the Lord to the eunuchs that keep my Sabbaths, and choose the things that please me, and take hold of my covenant. 6 Also the sons of the stranger, that join themselves to the Lord, to serve him, and to love the name of the Lord, to be his servants, every one that keeps the Sabbath from polluting it, and takes hold of my covenant; 7 Even them will I bring to my holy mountain, and make them joyful in my house of prayer: their burnt offerings and their sacrifices will be accepted upon my altar; for my house will be called a house of prayer for all people.

<sup>440</sup> GEN 2:2 And on the seventh day God ended his work which he had made; and he rested on the seventh day from all his work which he had made. 3 And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made. 1CO 16:1 Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye. 2 Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God has prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come. ACT 20:7 And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached to them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight.

<sup>441</sup> REV 1:10 I was in the Spirit on the Lord's day, and heard behind me a great voice, as of a trumpet.

<sup>442</sup> EXO 20:8 Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. 10 But the seventh day is the Sabbath of the Lord your God: in it you will not do any work, you, nor your son, nor your daughter, your manservant, nor your maidservant, nor your cattle, nor your stranger that is within your gates. MAT 5:17 Think not that I am come to destroy the law, or the prophets: I am not come to destroy, but to fulfill. 18 For truly I say to you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle will in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.

<sup>443</sup> EXO 20:8 Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it holy. EXO 16:23 And he said to them, This is what the Lord has said, To morrow is the rest of the holy Sabbath to the Lord: bake what you will bake today, and cook what you will cook; and what remains over lay up for you to be kept until the morning. 25 And Moses said, Eat that today; for today is a Sabbath to the Lord: today you will not find it in the field. 26 Six days you will gather it; but on the seventh day, which is the Sabbath, in it there will be none. 29 See, for that the Lord has given you the Sabbath, therefore he gives you on the sixth day the bread of two days; abide you every man in his place, let no man go out of his place on the seventh day. 30 So the people rested on the seventh day. 31:15 Six days may work be done; but in the seventh is the Sabbath of rest, holy to the Lord: whoever does any work in the Sabbath day, he will surely be put to death. 16 Which is why the children of Israel will keep the Sabbath, to observe the Sabbath throughout their generations, for a perpetual covenant. 17 It is a sign between me and the children of Israel forever: for in six days the Lord made heaven and earth, and on the seventh day he rested, and was refreshed. ISA 58:13 If you turn away your foot from the Sabbath, from doing your pleasure on my holy day; and call the Sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honorable; and will honor him, not doing your own ways, nor finding your own pleasure, nor speaking your own words. NEH 13:15 In those days saw I in Judah some treading wine presses on the Sabbath, and bringing in sheaves, and lading asses; as also wine, grapes, and figs, and all manner of burdens, which they brought into Jerusalem on the Sabbath day: and I testified

---

## Chapter 22 - Of Lawful Oaths and Vows

1. A lawful oath is part of religious worship,<sup>445</sup> in which, upon just occasion, the person swearing solemnly calls God to witness what he asserts, or promises, and to judge him according to the truth or falsehood of what he swears.<sup>446</sup>

2. The name of God only is that by which men ought to swear, and therein it is to be used with all holy fear and reverence.<sup>447</sup> Therefore, to swear vainly, or rashly, by that glorious and dreadful Name; or, to swear at all by any other thing, is sinful, and to be abhorred.<sup>448</sup> Yet, as in matters of weight and moment, an oath is warranted by the Word of God, under the New Testament as well as under the old;<sup>449</sup> so a lawful oath, being imposed by lawful authority, in such matters, ought to be taken.<sup>450</sup>

3. Whoever takes an oath ought duly to consider the weightiness of so solemn an act, and therein to avouch nothing but what he is fully persuaded is the truth:<sup>451</sup> nor may any man bind himself by oath to anything but what is good and just, and what he believes so to be, and what he is able and resolved to perform.<sup>452</sup> Yet it is a sin to refuse an oath touching anything that is good and just, being imposed by lawful authority.<sup>453</sup>

---

against them in the day in which they sold victuals. 16 There dwelt men of Tyre also in it, which brought fish, and all manner of ware, and sold on the Sabbath to the children of Judah, and in Jerusalem. 17 Then I contended with the nobles of Judah, and said to them, What evil thing is this that you do, and profane the Sabbath day? 18 Did not your fathers thus, and did not our God bring all this evil upon us, and upon this city? yet you bring more wrath upon Israel by profaning the Sabbath. 19 And it came to pass, that when the gates of Jerusalem began to be dark before the Sabbath, I commanded that the gates should be shut, and charged that they should not be opened till after the Sabbath: and some of my servants set I at the gates, that there should no burden be brought in on the Sabbath day. 21 Then I testified against them, and said to them, Why lodge you about the wall? if you do so again, I will lay hands on you. From that time forth came they no more on the Sabbath. 22 And I commanded the Levites that they should cleanse themselves, and that they should come and keep the gates, to sanctify the Sabbath day. Remember me, O my God, concerning this also, and spare me according to the greatness of your mercy.

<sup>444</sup> ISA 58:13 If you turn away your foot from the Sabbath, from doing your pleasure on my holy day; and call the Sabbath a delight, the holy of the Lord, honorable; and will honor him, not doing your own ways, nor finding your own pleasure, nor speaking your own words.

<sup>445</sup> DEU 10:20 You will fear the Lord your God; him will you serve, and to him will you cleave, and swear by his name.

<sup>446</sup> EXO 20:7 You will not take the name of the Lord your God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that takes his name in vain. LEV 19:12 And you will not swear by my name falsely, nor will you profane the name of your God: I am the Lord. 2CO 1:23 Moreover I call God for a record upon my soul, that to spare you I came not as yet to Corinth. 2CH 6:22 If a man sin against his neighbor, and an oath be laid upon him to make him swear, and the oath come before your altar in this house; 23 Then hear you from heaven, and do, and judge your servants, by requiting the wicked, by recompensing his way upon his own head; and by justifying the righteous, by giving him according to his righteousness.

<sup>447</sup> DEU 6:13 You will fear the Lord your God, and serve him, and will swear by his name.

<sup>448</sup> EXO 20:7 You will not take the name of the Lord your God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that takes his name in vain. JER 5:7 How will I pardon you for this? your children have forsaken me, and sworn by those who are no gods: when I had fed them to the full, they then committed adultery, and assembled themselves by troops in the harlots' houses. MAT 5:34 But I say to you, Swear not at all; neither by heaven; for it is God's throne. 37 But let your communication be, Yes, yes; No, no: for whatever is more than these comes of evil. JAM 5:12 But above all things, my brethren, swear not, neither by heaven, nor by the earth, nor by any other oath: but let your yes be yes; and your no, no; lest you fall into condemnation.

<sup>449</sup> HEB 6:16 For men truly swear by the greater: and an oath for confirmation is to them an end of all strife. 2CO 1:23 Moreover I call God for a record upon my soul, that to spare you I came not as yet to Corinth. ISA 65:16 That he who blesses himself in the earth will bless himself in the God of truth; and one who swears in the earth will swear by the God of truth; because the former troubles are forgotten, and because they are hid from my eyes.

<sup>450</sup> 1KI 8:31 If any man trespass against his neighbor, and an oath be laid upon him to cause him to swear, and the oath come before your altar in this house. NEH 13:25 And I contended with them, and cursed them, and struck certain of them, and plucked off their hair, and made them swear by God, saying, you will not give your daughters to their sons, nor take their daughters to your sons, or for yourselves. EZR 10:5 Then arose Ezra, and made the chief priests, the Levites, and all Israel, to swear that they should do according to this word. And they swore.

<sup>451</sup> EXO 20:7 You will not take the name of the Lord your God in vain; for the Lord will not hold him guiltless that takes his name in vain. JER 4:2 And you will swear, The Lord lives, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness; and the nations will bless themselves in him, and in him will they glory.

<sup>452</sup> GEN 24:2 And Abraham said to his eldest servant of his house, that ruled over all that he had, Put, I pray you, your hand under my thigh: 3 And I will make you swear by the Lord, the God of heaven, and the God of the earth, that you will not take a wife to my son of the daughters of the Canaanites, among whom I dwell. 5 And the servant said to him, Peradventure the woman will not be willing to

4. An oath is to be taken in the plain and common sense of the words, without equivocation, or mental reservation.<sup>454</sup> It cannot oblige to sin; but in anything not sinful, being taken, it binds to performance, although to a man's own hurt.<sup>455</sup> Not is it to be violated, although made to heretics, or infidels.<sup>456</sup>

5. A vow is of the like nature with a promissory oath, and ought to be made with the like religious care, and to be performed with the like faithfulness.<sup>457</sup>

6. It is not to be made to any creature, but to God alone:<sup>458</sup> and that it may be accepted, it is to be made voluntarily, out of faith, and conscience of duty, in way of thankfulness for mercy received, or for the obtaining of what we want, whereby we more strictly bind ourselves to necessary duties: or, to other things, so far and so long as they may fitly conduce thereto.<sup>459</sup>

---

follow me to this land: must I bring your son again to the land from where you came? 6 And Abraham said to him, Beware you that you do not bring my son there again. 8 And if the woman will not be willing to follow you, then you will be clear from this my oath: only do not bring my son there again. 9 And the servant put his hand under the thigh of Abraham his master, and swore to him concerning that matter.

<sup>453</sup> NUM 5:19 And the priest will charge her by an oath, and say to the woman, If no man has lain with you, and if you have not gone aside to uncleanness with another instead of your husband, be free from this bitter water that causes the curse. 21 Then the priest will charge the woman with an oath of cursing, and the priest will say to the woman, The Lord make you a curse and an oath among your people, when the Lord does make your thigh to rot, and your belly to swell. NEH 5:12 Then said they, We will restore them, and will require nothing of them; so will we do as you say. Then I called the priests, and took an oath of them, that they should do according to this promise. EXO 22:7 If a man will deliver to his neighbor money or stuff to keep, and it is stolen out of the man's house; if the thief be found, let him pay double. 8 If the thief is not found, then the master of the house will be brought to the judges, to see whether he have put his hand to his neighbor's goods. 9 For all manner of trespass, whether it is for ox, for ass, for sheep, for raiment, or for any manner of lost thing, which another challenges to be his, the cause of both parties will come before the judges; and whom the judges will condemn, he will pay double to his neighbor. 10 If a man delivers to his neighbor an ass, or an ox, or a sheep, or any beast, to keep; and it dies, or it is hurt, or driven away, no man seeing it: 11 Then will an oath of the Lord be made between them both, that he has not put his hand to his neighbor's goods; and the owner of the beast will accept it, and he will not replace it.

<sup>454</sup> JER 4:2 And you will swear, The Lord lives, in truth, in judgment, and in righteousness; and the nations will bless themselves in him, and in him will they glory. PSA 24:4 The one who has clean hands, and a pure heart; who has not lifted up his soul to vanity, nor sworn deceitfully.

<sup>455</sup> ISA 25:22 So and more also do God to the enemies of David, if I leave of all that pertain to him by the morning light any that pisses against the wall. 32 And David said to Abigail, Blessed be the Lord God of Israel, which sent you this day to meet me: 33 And blessed be your advice, and blessed be you, which have kept me this day from coming to shed blood, and from avenging myself with my own hand. 34 For in very deed, as the Lord God of Israel lives, which has kept me back from hurting you, except you had hastened and come to meet me, surely there had not been left to Nabal by the morning light any that pisses against the wall. PSA 15:4 In whose eyes a vile person is condemned; but he honors those who fear the Lord. The one who swears to his own hurt, and does not change.

<sup>456</sup> EZE 17:16 As I live, says the Lord God, surely in the place where the king dwells that made him king, whose oath he despised, and whose covenant he broke, even with him in the midst of Babylon he will die. 18 Seeing he despised the oath by breaking the covenant, when, behold, he had given his hand, and has done all these things, he will not escape. 19 Therefore thus says the Lord God; As I live, surely my oath that he has despised, and my covenant that he has broken, even it will I recompense upon his own head. JOS 9:18 And the children of Israel struck them not, because the princes of the congregation had sworn to them by the Lord God of Israel. And all the congregation murmured against the princes. 19 But all the princes said to all the congregation, We have sworn to them by the Lord God of Israel: now therefore we may not touch them. 2SA 21:1 Then there was a famine in the days of David three years, year after year; and David inquired of the Lord. And the Lord answered, It is for Saul, and for his bloody house, because he slew the Gibeonites.

<sup>457</sup> ISA 19:21 And the Lord will be known to Egypt, and the Egyptians will know the Lord in that day, and will do sacrifice and oblation; yes, they will vow a vow to the Lord, and perform it. ECC 5:4 When you vow a vow to God, defer not to pay it; for he has no pleasure in fools: pay what you have vowed. 5 Better is it that you should not vow, than that you should vow and not pay. 6 Suffer not your mouth to cause your flesh to sin; nor do you say before the angel, that it was an error: why should God be angry at your voice, and destroy the work of your hands? PSA 61:8 So will I sing praise to your name forever, that I may daily perform my vows. 66:13 I will go into your house with burnt offerings: I will pay you my vows, 14 Which my lips have uttered, and my mouth has spoken, when I was in trouble.

<sup>458</sup> PSA 76:11 Vow, and pay to the Lord your God: let all who be round about him bring presents to him that ought to be feared. JER 44:25 Thus says the Lord of hosts, the God of Israel, saying; you and your wives have both spoken with your mouths, and fulfilled with your hand, saying, We will surely perform our vows that we have vowed, to burn incense to the queen of heaven, and to pour out drink offerings to her: you will surely accomplish your vows, and surely perform your vows. 26 Therefore hear you the word of the Lord, all Judah that dwell in the land of Egypt; Behold, I have sworn by my great name, says the Lord, that my name will no more be named in the mouth of any man of Judah in all the land of Egypt, saying, The Lord God lives.

<sup>459</sup> DEU 23:21 When you will vow a vow to the Lord your God, you will not slack to pay it: for the Lord your God will surely require it of you; and it would be sin in you. 22 But if you will forbear to vow, it will be no sin in you. 23 What is gone out of your lips you will keep and perform; even a freewill offering, just as you have vowed to the Lord your God, which you have promised with your mouth. PSA 50:14 Offer to God thanksgiving; and pay your vows to the most High. GEN 28:20 And Jacob vowed a vow, saying, If God will be with me, and will keep me in this way that I go, and will give me bread to eat, and raiment to put on, 21 So that I come again to my

7. No man may vow to do anything forbidden in the Word of God, or what would hinder any duty therein commanded, or which is not in his own power, and for the performance whereof he has no promise of ability from God.<sup>460</sup> In which respects, popish monastical vows of perpetual single life, professed poverty, and regular obedience, are so far from being degrees of higher perfection, that they are superstitious and sinful snares, in which no Christian may entangle himself.<sup>461</sup>

---

## Chapter 23 - Of the Civil Magistrate

1. God, the supreme Lord and King of all the world, has ordained civil magistrates, to be, under Him, over the people, for His own glory, and the public good: and, to this end, has armed them with the power of the sword, for the defense and encouragement of those who are good, and for the punishment of evil doers.<sup>462</sup>

2. It is lawful for Christians to accept and execute the office of a magistrate, when called thereto:<sup>463</sup> in the managing whereof, as they ought especially to maintain piety, justice, and peace, according to the wholesome laws of each

---

father's house in peace; then will the Lord be my God: 22 And this stone, which I have set for a pillar, will be God's house: and of all that you will give me I will surely give the tenth to you. ISA 1:11 And she vowed a vow, and said, O Lord of hosts, if you will indeed look at the affliction of your handmaid, and remember me, and not forget your handmaid, but will give to your handmaid a man child, then I will give him to the Lord all the days of his life, and there will no razor come upon his head. PSA 66:13 I will go into your house with burnt offerings: I will pay you my vows, 14 Which my lips have uttered, and my mouth has spoken, when I was in trouble. 132:2 How he swore to the Lord, and vowed to the mighty God of Jacob; 3 Surely I will not come into the tabernacle of my house, nor go up into my bed; 4 I will not give sleep to my eyes, or slumber to my eyelids, 5 Until I find out a place for the Lord, a habitation for the mighty God of Jacob.

<sup>460</sup> ACT 23:12 And when it was day, certain of the Jews banded together, and bound themselves under a curse, saying that they would neither eat nor drink till they had killed Paul. 14 And they came to the chief priests and elders, and said, We have bound ourselves under a great curse, that we will eat nothing until we have slain Paul. MAR 6:26 And the king was exceeding sorry; yet for his oath's sake, and for their sakes which sat with him, he would not reject her. NUM 30:5 But if her father disallow her in the day that he hears; not any of her vows, or of her bonds wherewith she has bound her soul, will stand: and the Lord will forgive her, because her father disallowed her. 8 But if her husband disallowed her on the day that he heard it; then he will make her vow which she vowed, and what she uttered with her lips, wherewith she bound her soul, of no effect: and the Lord will forgive her. 12 But if her husband has utterly made them void on the day he heard them; then whatever proceeded out of her lips concerning her vows, or concerning the bond of her soul, will not stand: her husband has made them void; and the Lord will forgive her. 13 Every vow, and every binding oath to afflict the soul, her husband may establish it, or her husband may make it void.

<sup>461</sup> MAT 19:11 But he said to them, All men cannot receive this saying, save they to whom it is given. 12 For there are some eunuchs, which were so born from their mother's womb: and there are some eunuchs, which were made eunuchs of men: and there be eunuchs, which have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake. The one who is able to receive it, let him receive it. 1CO 7:2 Nevertheless, to avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband. 9 But if they cannot contain, let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn. EPH 4:28 Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labor, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needs. 1PE 4:2 That he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God. 1CO 7:23 you are bought with a price; do not be the servants of men.

<sup>462</sup> ROM 13:1 Let every soul be subject to the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 2 Whoever therefore resists the power, resists the ordinance of God: and those who resist will receive to themselves damnation. 3 For rulers are not a terror to good works, but to the evil. Will you then not be afraid of the power? do what is good, and you will have praise of the same: 4 For he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he bears not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that does evil. 1PE 2:13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it is to the king, as supreme; 14 Or to governors, as to those who are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of those who do well.

<sup>463</sup> PRO 8:15 By me kings reign, and princes decree justice. 16 By me princes rule, and nobles, even all the judges of the earth. ROM 13:1 Let every soul be subject to the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 2 Whoever therefore resists the power, resists the ordinance of God: and those who resist will receive to themselves damnation. 4 For he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he bears not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that does evil.

commonwealth;<sup>464</sup> so, for that end, they may lawfully, now under the New Testament, wage war, upon just and necessary occasion.<sup>465</sup>

3. The civil magistrate may not assume to himself the administration of the Word and sacraments, or the power of the keys of the kingdom of heaven:<sup>466</sup> yet he has authority, and it is his duty, to take order that unity and peace be preserved in the Church, that the truth of God be kept pure and entire, that all blasphemies and heresies be suppressed, all corruptions and abuses in worship and discipline prevented or reformed, and all the ordinances of

---

<sup>464</sup> PSA 2:10 Be wise now therefore, O you kings: be instructed, you judges of the earth. 12 Kiss the Son, lest he be angry, and you perish from the way, when his wrath is kindled but a little. Blessed are all those who put their trust in him. 1TI 2:2 For kings, and for all who are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. PSA 82:3 Defend the poor and fatherless: do justice to the afflicted and needy. 4 Deliver the poor and needy: rid them out of the hand of the wicked. 2SA 23:3 The God of Israel said, the Rock of Israel spoke to me, The one who rules over men must be just, ruling in the fear of God. 1PE 2:13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it is to the king, as supreme.

<sup>465</sup> LUK 3:14 And the soldiers likewise demanded of him, saying, And what will we do? And he said to them, Do violence to no man, nor accuse any falsely; and be content with your wages. ROM 13:4 For he is the minister of God to you for good. But if you do what is evil, be afraid; for he bears not the sword in vain: for he is the minister of God, a revenger to execute wrath upon him that does evil. MAT 8:9 For I am a man under authority, having soldiers under me: and I say to this man, Go, and he goes; and to another, Come, and he comes; and to my servant, Do this, and he does it. 10 When Jesus heard it, he marvelled, and said to those who followed, Truly I say to you, I have not found so great faith, no, not in Israel. ACT 10:1 There was a certain man in Caesarea called Cornelius, a centurion of the band called the Italian band, 2 A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always. REV 17:14 These will make war with the Lamb, and the Lamb will overcome them: for he is Lord of lords, and King of kings: and those who are with him are called, and chosen, and faithful. 16 And the ten horns which you saw upon the beast, these will hate the whore, and will make her desolate and naked, and will eat her flesh, and burn her with fire.

<sup>466</sup> 2CH 26:18 And they withstood Uzziah the king, and said to him, It appertains not to you, Uzziah, to burn incense to the Lord, but to the priests the sons of Aaron, that are consecrated to burn incense: go out of the sanctuary; for you have trespassed; nor will it be for your honor from the Lord God. MAT 18:17 And if he will neglect to hear them, tell it to the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be to you as a heathen man and a publican. MAT 16:19 And I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatever you will bind on earth will be bound in heaven: and whatever you will loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. 1CO 12:28 And God has set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. 29 Are all apostles? are all prophets? are all teachers? are all workers of miracles? EPH 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; 12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ. 1CO 4:1 Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God. 2 Moreover it is required in stewards, that a man be found faithful. ROM 10:15 And how will they preach, except they be sent? as it is written, How beautiful are the feet of those who preach the gospel of peace, and bring glad tidings of good things! HEB 5:4 And no man takes this honor to himself, but one who is called of God, as was Aaron.

God duly settled, administrated, and observed.<sup>467</sup> For the better effecting whereof, he has power to call synods, to be present at them and to provide that whatever is transacted in them be according to the mind of God<sup>468</sup>

4. It is the duty of people to pray for magistrates,<sup>469</sup> to honor their persons,<sup>470</sup> to pay them tribute or other dues,<sup>471</sup> to obey their lawful commands, and to be subject to their authority, for conscience' sake.<sup>472</sup> Infidelity, or difference in religion, does not make void the magistrates' just and legal authority, nor free the people from their due obedience to them:<sup>473</sup> from which ecclesiastical persons are not exempted,<sup>474</sup> much less has the Pope any power and jurisdiction

---

<sup>467</sup> ISA 49:23 And kings will be your nursing fathers, and their queens your nursing mothers: they will bow down to you with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet; and you will know that I am the Lord: for they will not be ashamed that wait for me. PSA 122:9 Because of the house of the Lord our God I will seek your good. EZR 7:23 Whatever is commanded by the God of heaven, let it be diligently done for the house of the God of heaven: for why should there be wrath against the realm of the king and his sons? 25 And you, Ezra, after the wisdom of your God, that is in your hand, set magistrates and judges, which may judge all the people that are beyond the river, all such as know the laws of your God; and teach you those who know them not. 26 And whoever will not do the law of your God, and the law of the king, let judgment be executed speedily upon him, whether it is to death, or to banishment, or to confiscation of goods, or to imprisonment. 27 Blessed be the Lord God of our fathers, which has put such a thing as this in the king's heart, to beautify the house of the Lord which is in Jerusalem: 28 And has extended mercy to me before the king, and his counsellors, and before all the king's mighty princes. And I was strengthened as the hand of the Lord my God was upon me, and I gathered together out of Israel chief men to go up with me. LEV 24:16 And one who blasphemeth the name of the Lord, he will surely be put to death, and all the congregation will certainly stone him: as well the stranger, as one who is born in the land, when he blasphemeth the name of the Lord, will be put to death. DEU 13:5 And that prophet, or that dreamer of dreams, will be put to death; because he has spoken to turn you away from the Lord your God, which brought you out of the land of Egypt, and redeemed you out of the house of bondage, to thrust you out of the way which the Lord your God commanded you to walk in. So will you put the evil away from the midst of you. 6 If your brother, the son of your mother, or your son, or your daughter, or the wife of your heart, or your friend, which is as your own soul, entice you secretly, saying, Let us go and serve other gods, which you have not known, you, nor your fathers. 12 If you will hear say in one of your cities, which the Lord your God has given you to dwell there, saying, etc. 2KI 18:4 He removed the high places, and broke the images, and cut down the groves, and broke in pieces the brazen serpent that Moses had made: for to those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it: and he called it Nehushtan. (1CH 13:1-8; 2KI 24:1-25) 2CH 34:33 And Josiah took away all the abominations out of all the countries that pertained to the children of Israel, and made all who were present in Israel to serve, even to serve the Lord their God. And all his days they departed not from following the Lord, the God of their fathers. 2CH 15:12 And they entered into a covenant to seek the Lord God of their fathers with all their heart and with all their soul; 13 That whoever would not seek the Lord God of Israel should be put to death, whether small or great, whether man or woman.

<sup>468</sup> 2CH 19:8 Moreover in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites, and of the priests, and of the chief of the fathers of Israel, for the judgment of the Lord, and for controversies, when they returned to Jerusalem. 9 And he charged them, saying, Thus will you do in the fear of the Lord, faithfully, and with a perfect heart. 10 And whatever cause will come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, you will even warn them that they trespass not against the Lord, and so wrath come upon you, and upon your brethren: this do, and you will not trespass. 11 And, behold, Amariah the chief priest is over you in all matters of the Lord; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, for all the king's matters: also the Levites will be officers before you. Deal courageously, and the Lord will be with the good. (2CH 29-30) MAT 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born. 5 And they said to him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet.

<sup>469</sup> 1TI 2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men; 2 For kings, and for all who are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.

<sup>470</sup> 1PE 2:17 Honor all men. Love the brotherhood. Fear God. Honor the king.

<sup>471</sup> ROM 13:6 For this cause pay you tribute also: for they are God's ministers, attending continually upon this very thing. 7 Render therefore to all their dues: tribute to whom tribute is due; custom to whom custom; fear to whom fear; honor to whom honor.

<sup>472</sup> ROM 13:5 Which is why you must be subject, not only for wrath, but also for conscience sake. TIT 3:1 Put them in mind to be subject to principalities and powers, to obey magistrates, to be ready to every good work.

<sup>473</sup> 1PE 2:13 Submit yourselves to every ordinance of man for the Lord's sake: whether it is to the king, as supreme; 14 Or to governors, as to those who are sent by him for the punishment of evildoers, and for the praise of those who do well. 16 As free, and not using your liberty for a cloak of maliciousness, but as the servants of God.

<sup>474</sup> ROM 13:1 Let every soul be subject to the higher powers. For there is no power but of God: the powers that be are ordained of God. 1KI 2:35 And the king put Benaiah the son of Jehoiada in his room over the host: and Zadok the priest did the king put in the room of Abiathar. ACT 25:9 But Festus, willing to do the Jews a pleasure, answered Paul, and said, Will you go up to Jerusalem, and there be judged of these things before me? 10 Then said Paul, I stand at Caesar's judgment seat, where I ought to be judged: to the Jews have I done no wrong, as you very well know. 11 For if I be an offender, or have committed anything worthy of death, I refuse not to die: but if there be none of these things whereof these accuse me, no man may deliver me to them. I appeal to Caesar. 2PE 2:1 But there were false prophets also among the people, even as there will be false teachers among you, who privily will bring in damnable heresies, even denying the Lord that bought them, and bring upon themselves swift destruction. 10 But chiefly those who walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous are they, self-willed, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities. 11 Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, do not bring railing accusation against them before the Lord. JUD 8 Likewise also these filthy dreamers defile the flesh, despise dominion, and speak evil of dignities. JUD 9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with

over them in their dominions, or over any of their people; and, least of all, to deprive them of their dominions, or lives, if he shall judge them to be heretics, or upon any other pretence whatever.<sup>475</sup>

---

## Chapter 24 - Of Marriage and Divorce

1. Marriage is to be between one man and one woman: nor is it lawful for any man to have more than one wife, nor for any woman to have more than one husband, at the same time.<sup>476</sup>

2. Marriage was ordained for the mutual help of husband and wife,<sup>477</sup> for the increase of mankind with a legitimate issue, and of the Church with a holy seed;<sup>478</sup> and for preventing of uncleanness.<sup>479</sup>

3. It is lawful for all sorts of people to marry, who are able with judgment to give their consent.<sup>480</sup> Yet it is the duty of Christians to marry only in the Lord.<sup>481</sup> And therefore such as profess the true reformed religion should not marry with infidels, papists, or other idolaters: nor should such as are godly be unequally yoked, by marrying with such as are notoriously wicked in their life, or maintain damnable heresies.<sup>482</sup>

---

the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, dare not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke you. 10 But these speak evil of those things which they know not: but what they know naturally, as brute beasts, in those things they corrupt themselves. 11 Woe to them! for they have gone in the way of Cain, and ran greedily after the error of Balaam for reward, and perished in the gainsaying of Core.

<sup>475</sup> 2TH 2:4 Who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sits in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God. REV 13:15 And he had power to give life to the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed. 16 And he causes all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads: 17 And that no man might buy or sell, save the one who had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.

<sup>476</sup> GEN 2:24 Therefore will a man leave his father and his mother, and will cleave to his wife: and they will be one flesh. MAT 19:5 And said, For this cause will a man leave father and mother, and will cleave to his wife: and they two will be one flesh? 6 Which is why they are no more two, but one flesh. What therefore God has joined together, let not man put apart. PRO 2:17 Which forsakes the guide of her youth, and forgets the covenant of her God.

<sup>477</sup> GEN 2:18 And the Lord God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him a help meet for him.

<sup>478</sup> MAL 2:15 And did not he make one? Yet had he the residue of the spirit. And why one? That he might seek a godly seed. Therefore take heed to your spirit, and let none deal treacherously against the wife of his youth.

<sup>479</sup> ICO 7:2 Nevertheless, to avoid fornication, let every man have his own wife, and let every woman have her own husband. 9 But if they cannot contain, let them marry: for it is better to marry than to burn.

<sup>480</sup> HEB 13:4 Marriage is honorable in all, and the bed undefiled: but whoremongers and adulterers God will judge. 1TI 4:3 Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God has created to be received with thanksgiving of those who believe and know the truth. ICO 7:36 But if any man think that he behaves himself unseemly toward his virgin, if she pass the flower of her age, and need so require, let him do what he will, he sins not: let them marry. 37 Nevertheless one who stands steadfast in his heart, having no necessity, but has power over his own will, and has so decreed in his heart that he will keep his virgin, does well. 38 So then one who gives her in marriage does well; but one who gives her not in marriage does better. GEN 24:57 And they said, We will call the damsel, and inquire at her mouth.

<sup>481</sup> ICO 7:39 The wife is bound by the law as long as her husband lives; but if her husband be dead, she is at liberty to be married to whom she will; only in the Lord.

<sup>482</sup> GEN 34:14 And they said to them, We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to one that is uncircumcised; for that were a reproach to us. EXO 34:16 And you take of their daughters to your sons, and their daughters go a whoring after their gods, and make your sons go a whoring after their gods. DEU 7:3 Nor will you make marriages with them; your daughter you will not give to his son, nor his daughter will you take to your son. 4 For they will turn away your son from following me, that they may serve other gods: so will the anger of the Lord be kindled against you, and destroy you suddenly. 1KI 11:4 For it came to pass, when Solomon was old, that his wives turned away his heart after other gods: and his heart was not perfect with the Lord his God, as was the heart of David his father. NEH 13:25 And I contended with them, and cursed them, and struck certain of them, and plucked off their hair, and made them swear by God, saying, you will not give your daughters to their sons, nor take their daughters to your sons, or for yourselves. 26 Did not Solomon king of Israel sin by these things? yet among many nations was there no king like him, who was beloved of his God, and God made him king over all Israel: nevertheless even him did outlandish women cause to sin. 27 Will we then hearken to you to do all this great evil, to transgress against our God in marrying strange wives? MAL 2:11 Judah has dealt treacherously, and an abomination is committed in Israel and in Jerusalem; for Judah has profaned the holiness of the Lord which he loved, and has married the daughter of a strange god. 12 The Lord will cut off the man that does this, the master and the scholar, out of the tabernacles of Jacob, and him that offers an offering to the Lord of hosts. 2CO 6:14 Do not be unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion has light with darkness?



4. Marriage ought not to be within the degrees of consanguinity or affinity forbidden by the Word.<sup>483</sup> Nor can such incestuous marriages ever be made lawful by any law of man or consent of parties, so as those persons may live together as man and wife.<sup>484</sup> The man may not marry any of his wife's kindred, nearer in blood than he may of his own: nor the woman of her husband's kindred, nearer in blood than of her own.<sup>485</sup>

5. Adultery or fornication committed after a contract, being detected before marriage, gives just occasion to the innocent party to dissolve that contract.<sup>486</sup> In the case of adultery after marriage, it is lawful for the innocent party to sue out a divorce and, after the divorce,<sup>487</sup> to marry another, as if the offending party were dead.<sup>488</sup>

6. Although the corruption of man be such as is apt to study arguments unduly to put apart those whom God has joined together in marriage: yet, nothing but adultery, or such willful desertion as can no way be remedied by the Church, or civil magistrate, is cause sufficient of dissolving the bond of marriage:<sup>489</sup> in which, a public and orderly course of proceeding is to be observed; and the persons concerned in it not left to their own wills, and discretion, in their own case.<sup>490</sup>

---

<sup>483</sup> (LEV 18) ICO 5:1 It is reported commonly that there is fornication among you, and such fornication as is not so much as named among the Gentiles, that one should have his father's wife. AMO 2:7 That pant after the dust of the earth on the head of the poor, and turn aside the way of the meek: and a man and his father will go in to the same maid, to profane my holy name.

<sup>484</sup> MAR 6:18 For John had said to Herod, It is not lawful for you to have your brother's wife. LEV 18:24 Defile not you yourselves in any of these things: for in all these the nations are defiled which I cast out before you: 25 And the land is defiled: therefore I do visit the iniquity of it upon it, and the land itself vomits out her inhabitants. 26 you will therefore keep my statutes and my judgments, and will not commit any of these abominations; nor will any of your own nation, nor any stranger that sojourns among you: 27 (For all these abominations have the men of the land done, which were before you, and the land is defiled;) 28 That the land spew not you out also, when you defile it, as it spewed out the nations that were before you.

<sup>485</sup> LEV 20:19 And you will not uncover the nakedness of your mother's sister, nor of your father's sister: for he uncovers his near kin: they will bear their iniquity. 20 And if a man will lie with his uncle's wife, he has uncovered his uncle's nakedness: they will bear their sin; they will die childless. 21 And if a man will take his brother's wife, it is an unclean thing: he has uncovered his brother's nakedness; they will be childless.

<sup>486</sup> MAT 1:18 Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Spirit. 19 Then Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily. 20 But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream, saying, Joseph, you son of David, do not fear to take to you Mary your wife: for what is conceived in her is of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>487</sup> MAT 5:31 It has been said, Whoever will put away his wife, let him give her a writing of divorce: 32 But I say to you, That whoever will put away his wife, saving for the cause of fornication, causes her to commit adultery: and whoever will marry her that is divorced commits adultery.

<sup>488</sup> MAT 19:9 And I say to you, Whoever will put away his wife, except it is for fornication, and will marry another, commits adultery: and whoso marries her which is put away does commit adultery. ROM 7:2 For the woman which has a husband is bound by the law to her husband so long as he lives; but if the husband be dead, she is loosed from the law of her husband. 3 So then if, while her husband lives, she be married to another man, she will be called an adulteress: but if her husband be dead, she is free from that law; so that she is no adulteress, though she be married to another man.

<sup>489</sup> MAT 19:8 He says to them, Moses because of the hardness of your hearts suffered you to put away your wives: but from the beginning it was not so. 9 And I say to you, Whoever will put away his wife, except it is for fornication, and will marry another, commits adultery: and whoso marries her which is put away does commit adultery. ICO 7:15 But if the unbelieving depart, let him depart. A brother or a sister is not under bondage in such cases: but God has called us to peace. MAT 19:6 Which is why they are no more two, but one flesh. What therefore God has joined together, let not man put apart.

<sup>490</sup> DEU 24:1 When a man has taken a wife, and married her, and it come to pass that she find no favor in his eyes, because he has found some uncleanness in her: then let him write her a bill of divorce, and give it in her hand, and send her out of his house. 2 And when she is departed out of his house, she may go and be another man's wife. 3 And if the latter husband hate her, and write her a bill of divorce, and gives it in her hand, and sends her out of his house; or if the latter husband die, which took her to be his wife; 4 Her former husband, which sent her away, may not take her again to be his wife, after that she is defiled; for that is abomination before the Lord: and you will not cause the land to sin, which the Lord your God gives you for an inheritance.

## Chapter 25 - Of the Church

1. The catholic or universal Church, which is invisible, consists of the whole number of the elect, that have been, are, or shall be gathered into one, under Christ the Head thereof; and is the spouse, the body, the fullness of Him that fills all in all.<sup>491</sup>
2. The visible Church, which is also catholic or universal under the Gospel (not confined to one nation, as before under the law), consists of all those throughout the world that profess the true religion;<sup>492</sup> and of their children:<sup>493</sup> and is the kingdom of the Lord Jesus Christ,<sup>494</sup> the house and family of God,<sup>495</sup> out of which there is no ordinary possibility of salvation.<sup>496</sup>
3. To this catholic visible Church Christ has given the ministry, oracles, and ordinances of God, for the gathering and perfecting of the saints, in this life, to the end of the world: and does, by His own presence and Spirit, according to His promise, make them effectual thereto.<sup>497</sup>
4. This catholic Church has been sometimes more, sometimes less visible.<sup>498</sup> And particular Churches, which are members thereof, are more or less pure, according as the doctrine of the Gospel is taught and embraced, ordinances administered, and public worship performed more or less purely in them.<sup>499</sup>

---

<sup>491</sup> EPH 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fullness of times he might gather together in one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him. 22 And has put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church, 23 Which is his body, the fullness of him that fills all in all. 5:23 For the husband is the head of the wife, even as Christ is the head of the church: and he is the savior of the body. 27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish. 32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church. COL 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

<sup>492</sup> 1CO 1:2 To the church of God which is at Corinth, to those who are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all who in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours. 1CO 12:12 For just as the body is one, and has many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ. 13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit. PSA 2:8 Ask of me, and I will give you the heathen for your inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for your possession. REV 7:9 After this I beheld, and, behold, a great multitude, which no man could number, of all nations, and kindreds, and people, and tongues, stood before the throne, and before the Lamb, clothed with white robes, and palms in their hands. ROM 15:9 And that the Gentiles might glorify God for his mercy; as it is written, For this cause I will confess to you among the Gentiles, and sing to your name. 10 And again he says, Rejoice, you Gentiles, with his people. 11 And again, Praise the Lord, all you Gentiles; and laud him, all you people. 12 And again, Esaias says, There will be a root of Jesse, and the one who will rise to reign over the Gentiles; in him will the Gentiles trust.

<sup>493</sup> 1CO 7:14 For the unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband: else were your children unclean; but now are they holy. ACT 2:39 For the promise is to you, and to your children, and to all who are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God will call. EZE 16:20 Moreover you have taken your sons and your daughters, whom you have borne to me, and these have you sacrificed to them to be devoured. Is this of your whoredoms a small matter, 21 That you have slain my children, and delivered them to cause them to pass through the fire for them? ROM 11:16 For if the firstfruit be holy, the lump is also holy: and if the root be holy, so are the branches. GEN 3:15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your seed and her seed; it will bruise your head, and you will bruise his heel. 17:7 And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God to you, and to your seed after you.

<sup>494</sup> MAT 13:47 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like to a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind. ISA 9:7 Of the increase of his government and peace there will be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even forever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this.

<sup>495</sup> EPH 2:19 Now therefore you are no more strangers and foreigners, but fellow citizens with the saints, and of the household of God. 3:15 Of whom the whole family in heaven and earth is named.

<sup>496</sup> ACT 2:47 Praising God, and having favor with all the people. And the Lord added to the church daily such as should be saved.

<sup>497</sup> 1CO 12:28 And God has set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. EPH 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers; 12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ: 13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, to a perfect man, to the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ. MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen. ISA 59:21 As for me, this is my covenant with them, says the Lord; My spirit that is upon you, and my words which I have put in your mouth, will not depart out of your mouth, nor out of the mouth of your seed, nor out of the mouth of your seed's seed, says the Lord, from henceforth and forever.

<sup>498</sup> ROM 11:3 Lord, they have killed your prophets, and dug down your altars; and I am left alone, and they seek my life. 4 But what says the answer of God to him? I have reserved to myself seven thousand men, who have not bowed the knee to the image of Baal. REV

5. The purest Churches under heaven are subject both to mixture and error;<sup>500</sup> and some have so degenerated, as to become no Churches of Christ, but synagogues of Satan.<sup>501</sup> Nevertheless, there shall be always a Church on earth to worship God according to His will.<sup>502</sup>

6. There is no other head of the Church but the Lord Jesus Christ.<sup>503</sup> Nor can the Pope of Rome, in any sense, be head thereof. but is that Antichrist, that man of sin, and son of perdition, that exalts himself, in the Church, against Christ and all that is called God.<sup>504</sup>

---

## Chapter 26 - Of the Communion of Saints

1. All saints, that are united to Jesus Christ their Head, by His Spirit, and by faith, have fellowship with Him in His grace, sufferings, death, resurrection, and glory:<sup>505</sup> and, being united to one another in love, they have communion in each other's gifts and graces,<sup>506</sup> and are obliged to the performance of such duties, public and private, as do conduce to their mutual good, both in the inward and outward man.<sup>507</sup>

---

12:6 And the woman fled into the wilderness, where she has a place prepared of God, that they should feed her there a thousand two hundred and threescore days. 14 And to the woman were given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness, into her place, where she is nourished for a time, and times, and half a time, from the face of the serpent.

<sup>499</sup> (REV 2-3 throughout) 1CO 5:6 Your glorying is not good. Know you not that a little leaven leavens the whole lump? 7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us.

<sup>500</sup> 1CO 13:12 For now we see through a glass, darkly; but then face to face: now I know in part; but then will I know even as also I am known. MAT 13:24-30, 47 Again, the kingdom of heaven is like to a net, that was cast into the sea, and gathered of every kind.

<sup>501</sup> REV 18:2 And he cried mightily with a strong voice, saying, Babylon the great is fallen, is fallen, and is become the habitation of devils, and the hold of every foul spirit, and a cage of every unclean and hateful bird. ROM 11:18 Boast not against the branches. But if you boast, you bear not the root, but the root you. 19 You will say then, The branches were broken off, that I might be grafted in. 20 Well; because of unbelief they were broken off, and you stand by faith. Do not be high-minded, but fear: 21 For if God spared not the natural branches, take heed lest he also spare not you. 22 Behold therefore the goodness and severity of God: on those who fell, severity; but toward you, goodness, if you continue in his goodness: otherwise you also will be cut off.

<sup>502</sup> MAT 16:18 And I say also to you, That you are Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell will not prevail against it. PSA 72:17 His name will endure forever: his name will be continued as long as the sun: and men will be blessed in him: all nations will call him blessed. 102:28 The children of your servants will continue, and their seed will be established before you. MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen.

<sup>503</sup> COL 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence. EPH 1:22 And has put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church.

<sup>504</sup> MAT 23:8 But do not be called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all you are brethren. 9 And call no man your father upon the earth: for one is your Father, which is in heaven. 10 Nor be called masters: for one is your Master, even Christ. 2TH 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day will not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition; 4 Who opposes and exalts himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sits in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God. 8 And then will that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord will consume with the spirit of his mouth, and will destroy with the brightness of his coming: 9 Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders. REV 13:6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and those who dwell in heaven.

<sup>505</sup> 1JO 1:3 What we have seen and heard declare we to you, that you also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ. EPH 3:16 That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man; 17 That Christ may dwell in your hearts by faith; that you, being rooted and grounded in love, 18 May be able to comprehend with all saints what is the breadth, and length, and depth, and height; 19 And to know the love of Christ, which passes knowledge, that you might be filled with all the fullness of God. JOH 1:16 And of his fullness have all we received, and grace for grace. EPH 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, has quickened us together with Christ, (by grace you are saved;) 6 And has raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus. PHI 3:10 That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable to his death. ROM 6:5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we will be also in the likeness of his resurrection: 6 Knowing this, that our old man is crucified with him, that the body of sin might be destroyed, that henceforth we should not serve sin. 2TI 2:12 If we suffer, we will also reign with him: if we deny him, he also will deny us.

<sup>506</sup> EPH 4:15 But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ: 16 From whom the whole body fitly joined together and compacted by what every joint supplies, according to the effectual working in the measure of every part, makes increase of the body to the edifying of itself in love. 1CO 12:7 But the manifestation of the Spirit is given to every man to profit withal. 1CO 3:21 Therefore let no man glory in men. For all things are yours; 22 Whether Paul, or Apollos, or Cephas, or the world, or life, or death, or things present, or things to come; all are yours; 23 And you are Christ's; and Christ is God's. COL 2:19 And

2. Saints by profession are bound to maintain a holy fellowship and communion in the worship of God, and in performing such other spiritual services as tend to their mutual edification;<sup>508</sup> as also in relieving each other in outward things, according to their several abilities and necessities. Which communion, as God offers opportunity, is to be extended to all those who, in every place, call upon the name of the Lord Jesus.<sup>509</sup>

3. This communion which the saints have with Christ, does not make them in any wise partakers of the substance of His Godhead; or to be equal with Christ in any respect: either of which to affirm is impious and blasphemous.<sup>510</sup> Nor does their communion one with another, as saints, take away, or infringe the title or propriety which each man has in his goods and possessions.<sup>511</sup>

---

## Chapter 27 - Of the Sacraments

1. Sacraments are holy signs and seals of the covenant of grace,<sup>512</sup> immediately instituted by God,<sup>513</sup> to represent Christ and His benefits; and to confirm our interest in Him:<sup>514</sup> as also, to put a visible difference between those that

---

not holding the Head, from which all the body by joints and bands having nourishment ministered, and knit together, increases with the increase of God.

<sup>507</sup> 1TH 5:11 Which is why comfort yourselves together, and edify one another, even as also you do. 14 Now we exhort you, brethren, warn those who are unruly, comfort the feebleminded, support the weak, be patient toward all men. ROM 1:11 For I long to see you, that I may impart to you some spiritual gift, to the end you may be established; 12 That is, that I may be comforted together with you by the mutual faith both of you and me. 14 I am debtor both to the Greeks, and to the Barbarians; both to the wise, and to the unwise. 1JO 3:16 Hereby perceive we the love of God, because he laid down his life for us: and we ought to lay down our lives for the brethren. 17 But whoso has this world's good, and sees his brother have need, and shuts up his heart of compassion from him, how dwells the love of God in him? 18 My little children, let us not love in word, nor in tongue; but in deed and in truth. GAL 6:10 As we have therefore opportunity, let us do good to all men, especially to those who are of the household of faith.

<sup>508</sup> HEB 10:24 And let us consider one another to provoke to love and to good works: 25 Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as you see the day approaching. ACT 2:42 And they continued steadfastly in the apostles' doctrine and fellowship, and in breaking of bread, and in prayers. 46 And they, continuing daily with one accord in the temple, and breaking bread from house to house, ate their meat with gladness and singleness of heart. ISA 2:3 And many people will go and say, Come you, and let us go up to the mountain of the Lord, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion will go forth the law, and the word of the Lord from Jerusalem. 1CO 11:20 When you come together therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord's supper.

<sup>509</sup> ACT 2:44 And all who believed were together, and had all things common; 45 And sold their possessions and goods, and parted them to all men, as every man had need. 1JO 3:17 But whoso has this world's good, and sees his brother have need, and shuts up his heart of compassion from him, how dwells the love of God in him? (2CO 8-9) ACT 11:29 Then the disciples, every man according to his ability, determined to send relief to the brethren which dwelt in Judaea: 30 Which also they did, and sent it to the elders by the hands of Barnabas and Saul.

<sup>510</sup> COL 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence. 19 For it pleased the Father that in him should all fullness dwell. 1CO 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him. ISA 42:8 I am the Lord: that is my name: and my glory will I not give to another, nor my praise to graven images. 1TI 6:15 Which in his times he will show, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords; 16 Who only has immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach to; whom no man has seen, nor can see: to whom be honor and power everlasting. Amen. PSA 45:7 You love righteousness, and hate wickedness: therefore God, your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above your fellows. HEB 1:8 But to the Son he says, your throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a scepter of righteousness is the scepter of your kingdom. 9 you have loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even your God, has anointed you with the oil of gladness above your fellows.

<sup>511</sup> EXO 20:15 You will not steal. EPH 4:28 Let him that stole steal no more: but rather let him labor, working with his hands the thing which is good, that he may have to give to him that needs. ACT 5:4 Whiles it remained, was it not your own? and after it was sold, was it not in your own power? why have you conceived this thing in your heart? you have not lied to men, but to God.

<sup>512</sup> ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those that believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also. GEN 17:7 And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God to you, and to your seed after you. 10 This is my covenant, which you will keep, between me and you and your seed after you; Every man child among you will be circumcised.

<sup>513</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. 1CO 11:23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread.

<sup>514</sup> 1CO 10:16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? 11:25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the

belong to the Church and the rest of the world;<sup>515</sup> and solemnly to engage them to the service of God in Christ, according to His Word.<sup>516</sup>

2. There is, in every sacrament, a spiritual relation, or sacramental union, between the sign and the thing signified: whence it comes to pass, that the names and effects of the one are attributed to the other.<sup>517</sup>

3. The grace which is exhibited in or by the sacraments rightly used, is not conferred by any power in them; nor does the efficacy of a sacrament depend upon the piety or intention of him that does administer it:<sup>518</sup> but upon the work of the Spirit,<sup>519</sup> and the word of institution, which contains, together with a precept authorizing the use thereof, a promise of benefit to worthy receivers.<sup>520</sup>

4. There are only two sacraments ordained by Christ our Lord in the Gospel; that is to say, Baptism, and the Supper of the Lord: neither of which may be dispensed by any, but by a minister of the Word lawfully ordained.<sup>521</sup>

5. The sacraments of the Old Testament in regard to the spiritual things thereby signified and exhibited, were, for substance, the same with those of the new.<sup>522</sup>

---

## Chapter 28 - Of Baptism

1. Baptism is a sacrament of the New Testament, ordained by Jesus Christ,<sup>523</sup> not only for the solemn admission of the party baptized into the visible Church;<sup>524</sup> but also to be to him a sign and seal of the covenant of grace,<sup>525</sup> of his

---

new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. GAL 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. 3:17 And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of no effect.

<sup>515</sup> ROM 15:8 Now I say that Jesus Christ was a minister of the circumcision for the truth of God, to confirm the promises made to the fathers. EXO 12:48 And when a stranger will sojourn with you, and will keep the Passover to the Lord, let all his males be circumcised, and then let him come near and keep it; and he will be as one that is born in the land: for no uncircumcised person will eat of it. GEN 34:14 And they said to them, We cannot do this thing, to give our sister to one that is uncircumcised; for that were a reproach to us.

<sup>516</sup> ROM 6:3 Know you not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? 4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life. 1CO 10:16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? 21 you cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: you cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils.

<sup>517</sup> GEN 17:10 This is my covenant, which you will keep, between me and you and your seed after you; Every man child among you will be circumcised. MAT 26:27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink you all of it; 28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>518</sup> ROM 2:28 For he is not a Jew, which is one outwardly; nor is that circumcision, which is outward in the flesh: 29 But he is a Jew, which is one inwardly; and circumcision is that of the heart, in the spirit, and not in the letter; whose praise is not of men, but of God. 1PE 3:21 The same image of the way in which baptism also now saves us (not the putting away of the filth of the flesh, but the answer of a good conscience toward God,) by the resurrection of Jesus Christ.

<sup>519</sup> MAT 3:11 I indeed baptize you with water to repentance: but the one who comes after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit, and with fire. 1CO 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

<sup>520</sup> MAT 26:27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink you all of it; 28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen.

<sup>521</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. 1CO 11:20 When you come together therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord's supper. 23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread. 1CO 4:1 Let a man so account of us, as of the ministers of Christ, and stewards of the mysteries of God. HEB 5:4 And no man takes this honor to himself, but the one who is called of God, as was Aaron.

<sup>522</sup> 1CO 10:1 Moreover, brethren, I would not that you should be ignorant, how that all our fathers were under the cloud, and all passed through the sea; 2 And were all baptized to Moses in the cloud and in the sea; 3 And did all eat the same spiritual meat; 4 And did all drink the same spiritual drink: for they drank of that spiritual Rock that followed them: and that Rock was Christ.

<sup>523</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

ingrafting into Christ,<sup>526</sup> of regeneration,<sup>527</sup> of remission of sins,<sup>528</sup> and of his giving up to God, through Jesus Christ, to walk in the newness of life.<sup>529</sup> Which sacrament is, by Christ's own appointment, to be continued in His Church until the end of the world.<sup>530</sup>

2. The outward element to be used in this sacrament is water, wherewith the party is to be baptized, in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit, by a minister of the Gospel, lawfully called thereto.<sup>531</sup>

3. Dipping of the person into the water is not necessary; but Baptism is rightly administered by pouring, or sprinkling water upon the person.<sup>532</sup>

4. Not only those that do actually profess faith in and obedience to Christ,<sup>533</sup> but also the infants of one, or both, believing parents, are to be baptized.<sup>534</sup>

---

<sup>524</sup> 1CO 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

<sup>525</sup> ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those that believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also. COL 2:11 In whom also you are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: 12 Buried with him in baptism, in which also you are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who has raised him from the dead.

<sup>526</sup> GAL 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. ROM 6:5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we will be also in the likeness of his resurrection.

<sup>527</sup> TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>528</sup> MAR 1:4 John did baptize in the wilderness, and preach the baptism of repentance for the remission of sins.

<sup>529</sup> ROM 6:3 Know you not, that so many of us as were baptized into Jesus Christ were baptized into his death? 4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

<sup>530</sup> MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>531</sup> MAT 3:11 I indeed baptize you with water to repentance: but the one who comes after me is mightier than I, whose shoes I am not worthy to bear: he will baptize you with the Holy Spirit, and with fire. JOH 1:33 And I did not know him: but the one who sent me to baptize with water, the same said to me, Upon whom you will see the Spirit descending, and remaining on him, the same is he which baptizes with the Holy Spirit. MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen.

<sup>532</sup> HEB 9:10 Which stood only in meats and drinks, and diverse washings, and carnal ordinances, imposed on them until the time of reformation. 19 For when Moses had spoken every precept to all the people according to the law, he took the blood of calves and of goats, with water, and scarlet wool, and hyssop, and sprinkled both the book, and all the people, 20 Saying, This is the blood of the testament which God has enjoined to you. 21 Moreover he sprinkled with blood both the tabernacle, and all the vessels of the ministry. 22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission. ACT 2:41 Then those who gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added to them about three thousand souls. 16:33 And he took them the same hour of the night, and washed their stripes; and was baptized, he and all his, straightway. MAR 7:4 And when they come from the market, except they wash, they eat not. And many other things there be, which they have received to hold, as the washing of cups, and pots, brazen vessels, and of tables.

<sup>533</sup> MAR 16:15 And he said to them, Go into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature. 16 One who believes and is baptized will be saved; but one who believes not will be damned. ACT 8:37 And Philip said, If you believe with all your heart, you may. And he answered and said, I believe that Jesus Christ is the Son of God. 38 And he commanded the chariot to stand still: and they went down both into the water, both Philip and the eunuch; and he baptized him.

<sup>534</sup> GEN 17:7 And I will establish my covenant between me and you and your seed after you in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God to you, and to your seed after you. 9 And God said to Abraham, You will keep my covenant therefore, you, and your seed after you in their generations. GAL 3:9 So then they which be of faith are blessed with faithful Abraham. 14 That the blessing of Abraham might come on the Gentiles through Jesus Christ; that we might receive the promise of the Spirit through faith. COL 2:11 In whom also you are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ: 12 Buried with him in baptism, in which also you are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who has raised him from the dead. ACT 2:38 Then Peter said to them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 39 For the promise is to you, and to your children, and to all who are afar off, even as many as the Lord our God will call. ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those that believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also: 12 And the father of circumcision to those who are not only of the circumcision, but who also walk in the steps of that faith of our father Abraham, which he had being yet uncircumcised. 1CO 7:14 For the unbelieving husband is sanctified by the wife, and the unbelieving wife is sanctified by the husband: else were your children unclean;

5. Although it is a great sin to condemn or neglect this ordinance,<sup>535</sup> yet grace and salvation are not so inseparably annexed to it, as that no person can be regenerated, or saved, without it:<sup>536</sup> or, that all who are baptized are undoubtedly regenerated.<sup>537</sup>

6. The efficacy of Baptism is not tied to that moment of time in which it is administered;<sup>538</sup> yet, notwithstanding, by the right use of this ordinance, the grace promised is not only offered, but really exhibited, and conferred, by the Holy Spirit, to such (whether of age or infants) as that grace belongs to, according to the counsel of God's own will, in His appointed time.<sup>539</sup>

7. The sacrament of Baptism is but once to be administered to any person.<sup>540</sup>

---

## Chapter 29 - Of the Lord's Supper

1. Our Lord Jesus, in the night in which He was betrayed, instituted the sacrament of His body and blood, called the Lord's Supper, to be observed in His Church, to the end of the world, for the perpetual remembrance of the sacrifice of Himself in His death; the sealing all benefits thereof to true believers, their spiritual nourishment and growth in Him, their further engagement in and to all duties which they owe to Him; and, to be a bond and pledge of their communion with Him, and with each other, as members of His mystical body.<sup>541</sup>

---

but now are they holy. MAT 28:19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit. MAR 10:13 And they brought young children to him, that he should touch them: and his disciples rebuked those that brought them. 14 But when Jesus saw it, he was much displeased, and said to them, Suffer the little children to come to me, and forbid them not: for of such is the kingdom of God. 15 Truly I say to you, Whoever will not receive the kingdom of God as a little child, he will not enter into it. 16 And he took them up in his arms, put his hands upon them, and blessed them. LUK 18:15 And they brought to him also infants, that he would touch them: but when his disciples saw it, they rebuked them.

<sup>535</sup> LUK 7:30 But the Pharisees and lawyers rejected the counsel of God against themselves, being not baptized of him. EXO 4:24 And it came to pass by the way in the inn, that the Lord met him, and sought to kill him. 25 Then Zipporah took a sharp stone, and cut off the foreskin of her son, and cast it at his feet, and said, Surely a bloody husband are you to me. 26 So he let him go: then she said, A bloody husband you are, because of the circumcision.

<sup>536</sup> ROM 4:11 And he received the sign of circumcision, a seal of the righteousness of the faith which he had yet being uncircumcised: that he might be the father of all those that believe, though they are not circumcised; that righteousness might be imputed to them also. ACT 10:2 A devout man, and one that feared God with all his house, which gave much alms to the people, and prayed to God always. 4 And when he looked on him, he was afraid, and said, What is it, Lord? And he said to him, your prayers and your alms are come up for a memorial before God. 22 And they said, Cornelius the centurion, a just man, and one that fears God, and of good report among all the nation of the Jews, was warned from God by a holy angel to send for you into his house, and to hear words of you. 31 And said, Cornelius, your prayer is heard, and your alms are had in remembrance in the sight of God. 45 And they of the circumcision which believed were astonished, as many as came with Peter, because that on the Gentiles also was poured out the gift of the Holy Spirit. 47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Spirit as well as we?

<sup>537</sup> ACT 8:13 Then Simon himself believed also: and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done. 23 For I perceive that you are in the poison of bitterness, and in the bond of iniquity.

<sup>538</sup> JOH 3:5 Jesus answered, Truly, truly, I say to you, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God. 8 The wind blows where it will, and you hear the sound of it, but can not tell from where it comes, and whither it goes: so is every one that is born of the Spirit.

<sup>539</sup> GAL 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ. TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit; EPH 5:25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it; 26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word. ACT 2:38 Then Peter said to them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit. 41 Then those who gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added to them about three thousand souls.

<sup>540</sup> TIT 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Spirit.

<sup>541</sup> 1CO 11:23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: 24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. 25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. 1CO 10:16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ? 17 For we being many are one bread, and one body: for we are all partakers of that one bread. 21 you cannot drink the cup of the Lord, and the cup of devils: you cannot be partakers of the Lord's table, and of the table of devils. 1CO 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

2. In this sacrament, Christ is not offered up to His Father; nor any real sacrifice made at all, for remission of sins of the quick or dead;<sup>542</sup> but only a commemoration of that one offering up of Himself, by Himself, upon the cross, once for all: and a spiritual oblation of all possible praise to God, for the same:<sup>543</sup> so that the popish sacrifice of the mass (as they call it) is most abominably injurious to Christ's one, only sacrifice, the alone propitiation for all the sins of His elect.<sup>544</sup>

3. The Lord Jesus has, in this ordinance, appointed His ministers to declare His word of institution to the people, to pray, and bless the elements of bread and wine, and thereby to set them apart from a common to a holy use; and to take and break the bread, to take the cup, and (they communicating also themselves) to give both to the communicants;<sup>545</sup> but to none who are not then present in the congregation.<sup>546</sup>

4. Private masses, or receiving this sacrament by a priest, or any other alone;<sup>547</sup> as likewise, the denial of the cup to the people,<sup>548</sup> worshipping the elements, the lifting them up, or carrying them about, for adoration, and the reserving them for any pretended religious use; are all contrary to the nature of this sacrament, and to the institution of Christ.<sup>549</sup>

5. The outward elements in this sacrament, duly set apart to the uses ordained by Christ, have such relation to Him crucified, as that, truly, yet sacramentally only, they are sometimes called by the name of the things they represent,

---

<sup>542</sup> HEB 9:22 And almost all things are by the law purged with blood; and without shedding of blood is no remission. 25 Nor yet that he should offer himself often, as the high priest enters into the holy place every year with blood of others; 26 For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once at the end of the world he has appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself. 28 So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and to those who look for him will he appear the second time without sin to salvation.

<sup>543</sup> ICO 11:24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. 25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. MAT 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and broke it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. 27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink you all of it.

<sup>544</sup> HEB 7:23 And they truly were many priests, because they were not suffered to continue by reason of death: 24 But this man, because he continues ever, has an unchangeable priesthood. 27 Who needs not daily, as those high priests, to offer up sacrifice, first for his own sins, and then for the people's: for this he did once, when he offered up himself. 10:11 And every priest stands daily ministering and offering oftentimes the same sacrifices, which can never take away sins: 12 But this man, after he had offered one sacrifice for sins forever, sat down at the right hand of God. 14 For by one offering he has perfected forever those who are sanctified. 18 Now where remission of these is, there is no more offering for sin.

<sup>545</sup> MAT 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and broke it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. 27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink you all of it; 28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins. MAR 14:22 And as they ate, Jesus took bread, and blessed, and broke it, and gave to them, and said, Take, eat: this is my body. 23 And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them: and they all drank of it. 24 And he said to them, This is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many. LUK 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and broke it, and gave to them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me. 20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you. ICO 11:23 For I have received of the Lord what also I delivered to you, That the Lord Jesus the same night in which he was betrayed took bread: 24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. 25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come.

<sup>546</sup> ACT 20:7 And upon the first day of the week, when the disciples came together to break bread, Paul preached to them, ready to depart on the morrow; and continued his speech until midnight. ICO 11:20 When you come together therefore into one place, this is not to eat the Lord's supper.

<sup>547</sup> ICO 10:6 Now these things were our examples, to the intent we should not lust after evil things, as they also lusted.

<sup>548</sup> MAR 14:23 And he took the cup, and when he had given thanks, he gave it to them: and they all drank of it. ICO 11:25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. 27 Which is why whoever will eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. 29 For one who eats and drinks unworthily, eats and drinks damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

<sup>549</sup> MAT 15:9 But in vain they do worship me, teaching for doctrines the commandments of men.



to wit, the body and blood of Christ;<sup>550</sup> albeit, in substance and nature, they still remain truly and only bread and wine, as they were before.<sup>551</sup>

6. That doctrine which maintains a change of the substance of bread and wine, into the substance of Christ's body and blood (commonly called transubstantiation) by consecration of a priest, or by any other way, is repugnant, not to Scripture alone, but even to common sense, and reason; overthrows the nature of the sacrament, and has been, and is, the cause of manifold superstitions; yes, of gross idolatries.<sup>552</sup>

7. Worthy receivers, outwardly partaking of the visible elements, in this sacrament,<sup>553</sup> do then also, inwardly by faith, really and indeed, yet not carnally and corporally but spiritually, receive and feed upon, Christ crucified, and all benefits of His death: the body and blood of Christ being then, not corporally or carnally, in, with, or under the bread and wine; yet, as really, but spiritually, present to the faith of believers in that ordinance, as the elements themselves are to their outward senses.<sup>554</sup>

8. Although ignorant and wicked men receive the outward elements in this sacrament; yet, they receive not the thing signified thereby; but, by their unworthy coming thereto, are guilty of the body and blood of the Lord, to their own damnation. Wherefore, all ignorant and ungodly persons, as they are unfit to enjoy communion with Him, so are they unworthy of the Lord's table; and cannot, without great sin against Christ, while they remain such, partake of these holy mysteries,<sup>555</sup> or be admitted thereto.<sup>556</sup>

---

## Chapter 30 - Of Church Censures

1. The Lord Jesus, as king and head of His Church, has therein appointed a government, in the hand of Church officers, distinct from the civil magistrate.<sup>557</sup>

---

<sup>550</sup> MAT 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and broke it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body. 27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink you all of it; 28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

<sup>551</sup> 1CO 11:26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. 27 Which is why whoever will eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. MAT 26:29 But I say to you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.

<sup>552</sup> ACT 3:21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God has spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began. 1CO 11:24 And when he had given thanks, he broke it, and said, Take, eat: this is my body, which is broken for you: this do in remembrance of me. 25 After the same manner also he took the cup, when he had supped, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood: this do you, as oft as you drink it, in remembrance of me. 26 For as often as you eat this bread, and drink this cup, you do show the Lord's death till he come. LUK 24:6 He is not here, but is risen: remember how he spoke to you when he was yet in Galilee. 39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: touch me, and see; for a spirit does not have flesh and bones, as you see me have.

<sup>553</sup> 1CO 11:28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup.

<sup>554</sup> 1CO 10:16 The cup of blessing which we bless, is it not the communion of the blood of Christ? The bread which we break, is it not the communion of the body of Christ?

<sup>555</sup> 1CO 11:27 Which is why whoever will eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. 29 For one who eats and drinks unworthily, eats and drinks damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. 2CO 6:14 Do not be unequally yoked together with unbelievers: for what fellowship has righteousness with unrighteousness? and what communion has light with darkness? 15 And what concord has Christ with Belial? or what part has one who believes with an infidel? 16 And what agreement has the temple of God with idols? for you are the temple of the living God; as God has said, I will dwell in them, and walk in them; and I will be their God, and they will be my people.

<sup>556</sup> 1CO 5:6 Your glorying is not good. Know you not that a little leaven leavens the whole lump? 7 Purge out therefore the old leaven, that you may be a new lump, as you are unleavened. For even Christ our Passover is sacrificed for us. 13 But those who are without God judges. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person. 2TH 3:6 Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you withdraw yourselves from every brother that walks disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us. 14 And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. 15 Yet count him not as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother. MAT 7:6 Give not what is holy to the dogs, nor do you cast your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you.

<sup>557</sup> ISA 9:6 For to us a child is born, to us a son is given: and the government will be upon his shoulder: and his name will be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace. 7 Of the increase of his government and peace

2. To these officers the keys of the kingdom of heaven are committed; by virtue whereof, they have power, respectively, to retain, and remit sins; to shut that kingdom against the impenitent, both by the Word, and censures; and to open it to penitent sinners, by the ministry of the Gospel; and by absolution from censures, as occasion shall require.<sup>558</sup>

3. Church censures are necessary, for the reclaiming and gaining of offending brethren, for deterring of others from the like offenses, for purging out of that leaven which might infect the whole lump, for vindicating the honor of Christ, and the holy profession of the Gospel, and for preventing the wrath of God, which might justly fall upon the Church, if they should suffer His covenant, and the seals thereof, to be profaned by notorious and obstinate offenders.<sup>559</sup>

4. For the better attaining of these ends, the officers of the Church are to proceed by admonition; suspension from the sacrament of the Lord's Supper for a season; and by excommunication from the Church; according to the nature of the crime, and demerit of the person.<sup>560</sup>

---

## Chapter 31 - Of Synods and Councils

1. For the better government, and further edification of the Church, there ought to be such assemblies as are commonly called synods or councils.<sup>561</sup>

---

there will be no end, upon the throne of David, and upon his kingdom, to order it, and to establish it with judgment and with justice from henceforth even forever. The zeal of the Lord of hosts will perform this. 1TI 5:17 Let the elders that rule well be counted worthy of double honor, especially they who labor in the word and doctrine. 1TH 5:12 And we beseech you, brethren, to know those who labor among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you. ACT 20:17 And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus, and called the elders of the church. 18 And when they were come to him, he said to them, you know, from the first day that I came into Asia, after what manner I have been with you at all seasons. HEB 13:7 Remember those who have the rule over you, who have spoken to you the word of God: whose faith follow, considering the end of their conversation. 17 Obey those who have the rule over you, and submit yourselves: for they watch for your souls, as those who must give account, that they may do it with joy, and not with grief: for that is unprofitable for you. 24 Salute all those that have the rule over you, and all the saints. They of Italy salute you. 1CO 12:28 And God has set some in the church, first apostles, secondarily prophets, thirdly teachers, after that miracles, then gifts of healings, helps, governments, diversities of tongues. MAT 28:18 And Jesus came and spoke to them, saying, All power is given to me in heaven and in earth. 19 Go therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Spirit: 20 Teaching them to observe all things whatever I have commanded you: and, behold, I am with you always, even to the end of the world. Amen.

<sup>558</sup> MAT 16:19 And I will give to you the keys of the kingdom of heaven: and whatever you will bind on earth will be bound in heaven: and whatever you will loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. 18:17 And if he will neglect to hear them, tell it to the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be to you as a heathen man and a publican. 18 Truly I say to you, Whatever you will bind on earth will be bound in heaven: and whatever you will loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. JOH 20:21 Then said Jesus to them again, Peace be to you: as my Father has sent me, even so send I you. 22 And when he had said this, he breathed on them, and says to them, Receive you the Holy Spirit: 23 Whosoever sins you remit, they are remitted to them; and whosoever sins you retain, they are retained. 2CO 2:6 Sufficient to such a man is this punishment, which was inflicted of many. 7 So that contrariwise you ought rather to forgive him, and comfort him, lest perhaps such a one should be swallowed up with overmuch sorrow. 8 Which is why I beseech you that you would confirm your love toward him.

<sup>559</sup> (1CO 5 throughout) 1TI 5:20 Those who sin rebuke before all, that others also may fear. MAT 7:6 Give not what is holy to the dogs, nor do you cast your pearls before swine, lest they trample them under their feet, and turn again and rend you. 1TI 1:20 Of whom are Hymenaeus and Alexander; whom I have delivered to Satan, that they may learn not to blaspheme. 1CO 11:27 Which is why whoever will eat this bread, and drink this cup of the Lord, unworthily, will be guilty of the body and blood of the Lord. 28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup. 29 For one who eats and drinks unworthily, eats and drinks damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body. 30 For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep. 31 For if we would judge ourselves, we should not be judged. 32 But when we are judged, we are chastened of the Lord, that we should not be condemned with the world. 33 Which is why, my brethren, when you come together to eat, wait one for another. 34 And if any man hunger, let him eat at home; that you come not together to condemnation. And the rest will I set in order when I come. JUD 23 And others save with fear, pulling them out of the fire; hating even the garment spotted by the flesh.

<sup>560</sup> 1TH 5:12 And we beseech you, brethren, to know those who labor among you, and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you. 2TH 3:6 Now we command you, brethren, in the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, that you withdraw yourselves from every brother that walks disorderly, and not after the tradition which he received of us. 14 And if any man obey not our word by this epistle, note that man, and have no company with him, that he may be ashamed. 15 Yet count him not as an enemy, but admonish him as a brother. 1CO 5:4 In the name of our Lord Jesus Christ, when you are gathered together, and my spirit, with the power of our Lord Jesus Christ, 5 To deliver such an one to Satan for the destruction of the flesh, that the spirit may be saved in the day of the Lord Jesus. 13 But those who are without God judges. Therefore put away from among yourselves that wicked person. MAT 18:17 And if he will neglect to hear them, tell it to the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be to you as a heathen man and a publican. TIT 3:10 A man that is a heretic after the first and second admonition reject.

2. As magistrates may lawfully call a synod of ministers, and other fit persons, to consult and advise with, about matters of religion;<sup>562</sup> so, if magistrates be open enemies to the Church, the ministers of Christ, of themselves, by virtue of their office, or they, with other fit persons upon delegation from their Churches, may meet together in such assemblies.<sup>563</sup>

3. It belongs to synods and councils, ministerially to determine controversies of faith, and cases of conscience; to set down rules and directions for the better ordering of the public worship of God, and government of his Church; to receive complaints in cases of maladministration, and authoritatively to determine the same; which decrees and determinations, if consonant to the Word of God, are to be received with reverence and submission; not only for their agreement with the Word, but also for the power whereby they are made, as being an ordinance of God appointed thereto in His Word.<sup>564</sup>

4. All synods or councils, since the apostles' times, whether general or particular, may err; and many have erred. Therefore they are not to be made the rule of faith, or practice; but to be used as a help in both.<sup>565</sup>

5. Synods and councils are to handle, or conclude nothing, but what is ecclesiastical: and are not to intermeddle with civil affairs which concern the commonwealth, unless by way of humble petition in cases extraordinary; or, by way of advice, for satisfaction of conscience, if they be thereto required by the civil magistrate.<sup>566</sup>

---

<sup>561</sup> ACT 15:2 When therefore Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain other of them, should go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders about this question. 4 And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received of the church, and of the apostles and elders, and they declared all things that God had done with them. 6 And the apostles and elders came together for to consider of this matter.

<sup>562</sup> ISA 49:23 And kings will be your nursing fathers, and their queens your nursing mothers: they will bow down to you with their face toward the earth, and lick up the dust of your feet; and you will know that I am the Lord: for they will not be ashamed that wait for me. 1TI 2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men; 2 For kings, and for all who are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty. 2CH 19:8 Moreover in Jerusalem did Jehoshaphat set of the Levites, and of the priests, and of the chief of the fathers of Israel, for the judgment of the Lord, and for controversies, when they returned to Jerusalem. 9 And he charged them, saying, Thus will you do in the fear of the Lord, faithfully, and with a perfect heart. 10 And whatever cause will come to you of your brethren that dwell in their cities, between blood and blood, between law and commandment, statutes and judgments, you will even warn them that they trespass not against the Lord, and so wrath come upon you, and upon your brethren: this do, and you will not trespass. 11 And, behold, Amariah the chief priest is over you in all matters of the Lord; and Zebadiah the son of Ishmael, the ruler of the house of Judah, for all the king's matters: also the Levites will be officers before you. Deal courageously, and the Lord will be with the good. (2CH 29-30 throughout) MAT 2:4 And when he had gathered all the chief priests and scribes of the people together, he demanded of them where Christ should be born. 5 And they said to him, In Bethlehem of Judaea: for thus it is written by the prophet. PRO 11:14 Where no counsel is, the people fall: but in the multitude of counsellors there is safety.

<sup>563</sup> ACT 15:2 When therefore Paul and Barnabas had no small dissension and disputation with them, they determined that Paul and Barnabas, and certain other of them, should go up to Jerusalem to the apostles and elders about this question. 4 And when they were come to Jerusalem, they were received of the church, and of the apostles and elders, and they declared all things that God had done with them. 22 Then pleased it the apostles and elders, with the whole church, to send chosen men of their own company to Antioch with Paul and Barnabas; namely, Judas surnamed Barsabas, and Silas, chief men among the brethren: 23 And they wrote letters by them after this manner; The apostles and elders and brethren send greeting to the brethren which are of the Gentiles in Antioch and Syria and Cilicia: 25 It seemed good to us, being assembled with one accord, to send chosen men to you with our beloved Barnabas and Paul.

<sup>564</sup> ACT 15:15 And to this agree the words of the prophets; as it is written. 19 Which is why my sentence is, that we trouble not them, which from among the Gentiles are turned to God. 24 Forasmuch as we have heard, that certain which went out from us have troubled you with words, subverting your souls, saying, you must be circumcised, and keep the law: to whom we gave no such commandment. 27 We have sent therefore Judas and Silas, who will also tell you the same things by mouth. 28 For it seemed good to the Holy Spirit, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things; 29 That you abstain from meats offered to idols, and from blood, and from things strangled, and from fornication: from which if you keep yourselves, you will do well. Fare you well. 30 So when they were dismissed, they came to Antioch: and when they had gathered the multitude together, they delivered the epistle: 31 Which when they had read, they rejoiced for the consolation. 16:4 And as they went through the cities, they delivered them the decrees for to keep, that were ordained of the apostles and elders which were at Jerusalem. MAT 18:17 And if he will neglect to hear them, tell it to the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be to you as a heathen man and a publican. 18 Truly I say to you, Whatever you will bind on earth will be bound in heaven: and whatever you will loose on earth will be loosed in heaven. 19 Again I say to you, That if two of you will agree on earth as touching anything that they will ask, it will be done for them of my Father which is in heaven. 20 For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.

<sup>565</sup> EPH 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone. ACT 17:11 These were more noble than those in Thessalonica, in that they received the word with all readiness of mind, and searched the scriptures daily, whether those things were so. 1CO 2:5 That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God. 2CO 1:24 Not for that we have dominion over your faith, but are helpers of your joy: for by faith you stand.

---

## Chapter 32 - Of the State of Men after Death, and of the Resurrection of the Dead

1. The bodies of men, after death, return to dust, and see corruption:<sup>567</sup> but their souls, which neither die nor sleep, having an immortal subsistence, immediately return to God who gave them:<sup>568</sup> the souls of the righteous, being then made perfect in holiness, are received into the highest heavens, where they behold the face of God, in light and glory, waiting for the full redemption of their bodies.<sup>569</sup> And the souls of the wicked are cast into hell, where they remain in torments and utter darkness, reserved to the judgment of the great day.<sup>570</sup> Beside these two places, for souls separated from their bodies, the Scripture acknowledges none.

2. At the last day, such as are found alive shall not die, but be changed:<sup>571</sup> and all the dead shall be raised up, with the selfsame bodies, and none other (although with different qualities), which shall be united again to their souls forever.<sup>572</sup>

3. The bodies of the unjust shall, by the power of Christ, be raised to dishonor: the bodies of the just, by His Spirit, to honor; and be made conformable to His own glorious body.<sup>573</sup>

---

## Chapter 33 - Of the Last Judgment

1. God has appointed a day, in which He will judge the world, in righteousness, by Jesus Christ,<sup>574</sup> to whom all power and judgment is given of the Father.<sup>575</sup> In which day, not only the apostate angels shall be judged,<sup>576</sup> but

---

<sup>566</sup> LUK 12:13 And one of the company said to him, Master, speak to my brother, that he divide the inheritance with me. 14 And he said to him, Man, who made me a judge or a divider over you? JOH 18:36 Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence.

<sup>567</sup> GEN 3:19 In the sweat of your face will you eat bread, till you return to the ground; for out of it were you taken: for dust you are, and to dust will you return. ACT 13:36 For David, after he had served his own generation by the will of God, fell on sleep, and was laid to his fathers, and saw corruption.

<sup>568</sup> LUK 23:43 And Jesus said to him, Truly I say to you, Today you will be with me in paradise. ECC 12:7 Then the dust will return to the earth as it was: and the spirit will return to God who gave it.

<sup>569</sup> HEB 12:23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect. 2CO 5:1 For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, a house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens. 6 Therefore we are always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord. 8 We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord. PHI 1:23 For I am in a strait between two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better. ACT 3:21 Whom the heaven must receive until the times of restitution of all things, which God has spoken by the mouth of all his holy prophets since the world began. EPH 4:10 The one who descended is the same also that ascended up far above all heavens, that he might fill all things.

<sup>570</sup> LUK 16:23 And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and sees Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. 24 And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame. ACT 1:25 That he may take part of this ministry and apostleship, from which Judas by transgression fell, that he might go to his own place. JUD 6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness to the judgment of the great day. 7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrha, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire. 1PE 3:19 By which also he went and preached to the spirits in prison.

<sup>571</sup> 1TH 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain will be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so will we ever be with the Lord. 1CO 15:51 Behold, I show you a mystery; We will not all sleep, but we will all be changed, 52 In a moment, in the twinkling of an eye, at the last trump: for the trumpet will sound, and the dead will be raised incorruptible, and we will be changed.

<sup>572</sup> JOB 19:26 And though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh will I see God: 27 Whom I will see for myself, and my eyes will behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me. 1CO 15:42 So also is the resurrection of the dead. It is sown in corruption; it is raised in incorruption: 43 It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness; it is raised in power: 44 It is sown a natural body; it is raised a spiritual body. There is a natural body, and there is a spiritual body.

<sup>573</sup> ACT 24:15 And have hope toward God, which they themselves also allow, that there will be a resurrection of the dead, both of the just and unjust. JOH 5:28 Marvel not at this: for the hour is coming, in which all who are in the graves will hear his voice, 29 And will come forth; those who have done good, to the resurrection of life; and those who have done evil, to the resurrection of damnation. 1CO 15:43 It is sown in dishonor; it is raised in glory: it is sown in weakness; it is raised in power. PHI 3:21 Who will change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like to his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things to himself.

likewise all persons that have lived upon earth shall appear before the tribunal of Christ, to give an account of their thoughts, words, and deeds; and to receive according to what they have done in the body, whether good or evil.<sup>577</sup>

2. The end of God's appointing this day is for the manifestation of the glory of His mercy, in the eternal salvation of the elect; and of His justice, in the damnation of the reprobate, who are wicked and disobedient. For then shall the righteous go into everlasting life, and receive that fullness of joy and refreshing, which shall come from the presence of the Lord; but the wicked who know not God, and obey not the Gospel of Jesus Christ, shall be cast into eternal torments, and be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of His power.<sup>578</sup>

3. As Christ would have us to be certainly persuaded that there shall be a day of judgment, both to deter all men from sin; and for the greater consolation of the godly in their adversity:<sup>579</sup> so will He have that day unknown to men,

---

<sup>574</sup> ACT 17:31 Because he has appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he has ordained; whereof he has given assurance to all men, in that he has raised him from the dead.

<sup>575</sup> JOH 5:27 And has given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man.

<sup>576</sup> 1CO 6:3 Know you not that we will judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life? JUD 6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he has reserved in everlasting chains under darkness to the judgment of the great day. 2PE 2:4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved to judgment.

<sup>577</sup> 2CO 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he has done, whether it is good or bad. ECC 12:14 For God will bring every work into judgment, with every secret thing, whether it is good, or whether it is evil. ROM 2:16 In the day when God will judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel. 14:10 But why do you judge your brother? or why do you despise your brother? for we will all stand before the judgment seat of Christ. 12 So then every one of us will give account of himself to God. MAT 12:36 But I say to you, That every idle word that men will speak, they will give account of it in the day of judgment. 37 For by your words you will be justified, and by your words you will be condemned.

<sup>578</sup> MAT 25:31 When the Son of man will come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then will he sit upon the throne of his glory: 32 And before him will be gathered all nations: and he will separate them one from another, as a shepherd divides his sheep from the goats: 33 And he will set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left. 34 Then will the King say to them on his right hand, Come, you blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world: 35 For I was hungry, and you gave me meat: I was thirsty, and you gave me drink: I was a stranger, and you took me in: 36 Naked, and you clothed me: I was sick, and you visited me: I was in prison, and you came to me. 37 Then will the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we you hungry, and fed you? or thirsty, and gave you drink? 38 When saw we you a stranger, and took you in? or naked, and clothed you? 39 Or when saw we you sick, or in prison, and came to you? 40 And the King will answer and say to them, Truly I say to you, Inasmuch as you have done it to one of the least of these my brethren, you have done it to me. 41 Then he will say also to them on the left hand, Depart from me, you cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels: 42 For I was hungry, and you gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and you gave me no drink: 43 I was a stranger, and you took me not in: naked, and you clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and you visited me not. 44 Then will they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we you hungry, or thirsty, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister to you? 45 Then will he answer them, saying, Truly I say to you, Inasmuch as you did it not to one of the least of these, you did it not to me. 46 And these will go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal. ROM 2:5 But after your hardness and impenitent heart treasures up to yourself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God; 6 Who will render to every man according to his deeds: ROM 9:22 What if God, willing to show his wrath, and to make his power known, endured with much longsuffering the vessels of wrath fitted for destruction: 23 And that he might make known the riches of his glory on the vessels of mercy, which he had afore prepared to glory. MAT 5:21 His lord said to him, Well done, you good and faithful servant: you have been faithful over a few things, I will make you ruler over many things: enter you into the joy of your lord. ACT 3:19 Repent you therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing will come from the presence of the Lord; 2TH 1:7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus will be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, 8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on those who know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ: 9 Who will be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power; 10 When he will come to be glorified in his saints, and to be admired in all those that believe (because our testimony among you was believed) in that day.

<sup>579</sup> 2PE 3:11 Seeing then that all these things will be dissolved, what manner of persons ought you to be in all holy conversation and godliness. 14 Which is why, beloved, seeing that you look for such things, be diligent that you may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless. 2CO 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he has done, whether it is good or bad. 11 Knowing therefore the terror of the Lord, we persuade men; but we are made manifest to God; and I trust also are made manifest in your consciences. 2TH 1:5 Which is a manifest token of the righteous judgment of God, that you may be counted worthy of the kingdom of God, for which you also suffer: 6 Seeing it is a righteous thing with God to recompense tribulation to those who trouble you; 7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus will be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels, LUK 21:7 And they asked him, saying, Master, but when will these things be? and what sign will there be when these things will come to pass? 28 And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draws near. ROM 8:23 And not only they, but ourselves also, which have the first fruits of the Spirit, even we ourselves groan within ourselves, waiting for the adoption, to wit, the redemption of our body. 24 For we are saved by hope: but hope

that they may shake off all carnal security, and be always watchful, because they know not at what hour the Lord will come; and may be ever prepared to say, "Come Lord Jesus, come quickly, Amen."<sup>580</sup>

---

that is seen is not hope: for what a man sees, why does he yet hope for? 25 But if we hope for that we see not, then do we with patience wait for it.

<sup>580</sup> MAT 24:36 But of that day and hour knows no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only. 42 Watch therefore: for you know not what hour your Lord does come. 43 But know this, that if the goodman of the house had known in what watch the thief would come, he would have watched, and would not have suffered his house to be broken up. 44 Therefore be also ready: for in such an hour as you think not the Son of man comes. MAR 13:35 Watch you therefore: for you know not when the master of the house comes, at even, or at midnight, or at the cockcrowing, or in the morning: 36 Lest coming suddenly he find you sleeping. 37 And what I say to you I say to all, Watch. LUK 12:35 Let your loins be wrapped about, and your lights burning; 36 And you yourselves like to men that wait for their lord, when he will return from the wedding; that when he comes and knocks, they may open to him immediately. REV 22:20 He which testifies these things says, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus